

PacketFence 

# Network Devices Configuration Guide

PacketFence v13.0.0

Version 13.0.0 - August 2023

# Table of Contents

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 1. About this Guide                                    | 2   |
| 1.1. Other sources of information                      | 2   |
| 2. Note on Inline enforcement support                  | 3   |
| 3. Note on RADIUS accounting                           | 4   |
| 4. List of supported Network Devices                   | 5   |
| 5. Switch configuration                                | 6   |
| 5.1. Assumptions                                       | 6   |
| 5.2. 3COM  | 6   |
| 5.3. Alcatel   | 12  |
| 5.4. AlliedTelesis                                     | 16  |
| 5.5. Amer  | 21  |
| 5.6. Aruba   | 22  |
| 5.7. Avaya   | 23  |
| 5.8. Brocade   | 25  |
| 5.9. Cisco   | 28  |
| 5.10. Cisco Small Business (SMB)                       | 67  |
| 5.11. D-Link   | 69  |
| 5.12. Dell   | 71  |
| 5.13. Edge core  | 77  |
| 5.14. Enterasys  | 78  |
| 5.15. Extreme Networks                                 | 80  |
| 5.16. Foundry  | 84  |
| 5.17. H3C  | 86  |
| 5.18. HP   | 89  |
| 5.19. HP ProCurve                                      | 90  |
| 5.20. Huawei   | 100 |
| 5.21. IBM  | 103 |
| 5.22. Intel  | 104 |
| 5.23. Juniper  | 104 |
| 5.24. LG-Ericsson                                      | 109 |
| 5.25. Linksys  | 111 |
| 5.26. Netgear  | 111 |
| 5.27. Nortel   | 114 |
| 5.28. Pica8  | 115 |
| 5.29. SMC  | 116 |
| 5.30. Ubiquiti   | 117 |
| 6. Wireless Controllers and Access Point Configuration | 121 |
| 6.1. Assumptions                                       | 121 |
| 6.2. Unsupported Equipment                             | 121 |
| 6.3. Aerohive Networks                                 | 122 |
| 6.4. Anyfi Networks                                    | 140 |
| 6.5. Avaya   | 143 |
| 6.6. Aruba   | 143 |
| 6.7. Belair Networks (now Ericsson)                    | 163 |
| 6.8. Bluesocket  | 164 |
| 6.9. Brocade   | 167 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 6.10. Cambium                                  | 167 |
| 6.11. Cisco                                    | 171 |
| 6.12. CoovaChilli                              | 212 |
| 6.13. D-Link                                   | 214 |
| 6.14. Extreme Networks                         | 214 |
| 6.15. Extricom                                 | 216 |
| 6.16. Fortinet FortiGate                       | 216 |
| 6.17. Hostapd                                  | 217 |
| 6.18. Huawei                                   | 221 |
| 6.19. Meraki                                   | 224 |
| 6.20. Mikrotik                                 | 238 |
| 6.21. HP                                       | 245 |
| 6.22. Meru                                     | 246 |
| 6.23. Mojo Networks                            | 249 |
| 6.24. Motorola                                 | 253 |
| 6.25. Ruckus                                   | 257 |
| 6.26. Ruckus SmartZone                         | 264 |
| 6.27. Trapeze                                  | 273 |
| 6.28. Ubiquiti                                 | 274 |
| 6.29. Xirrus                                   | 282 |
| 7. VPN Configuration                           | 284 |
| 7.1. Cisco ASA                                 | 284 |
| 7.2. OpenVPN                                   | 285 |
| 8. Firewall Configuration                      | 289 |
| 8.1. Palo Alto firewall                        | 289 |
| 9. Additional Information                      | 290 |
| 10. Commercial Support and Contact Information | 291 |
| 11. GNU Free Documentation License             | 292 |



Copyright © 2023 Inverse inc.

Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this document under the terms of the GNU Free Documentation License, Version 1.2 or any later version published by the Free Software Foundation; with no Invariant Sections, no Front-Cover Texts, and no Back-Cover Texts. A copy of the license is included in the section entitled "GNU Free Documentation License".

The fonts used in this guide are licensed under the SIL Open Font License, Version 1.1. This license is available with a FAQ at: <http://scripts.sil.org/OFL>

Copyright © Łukasz Dziejczak, <http://www.latofonts.com/>, with Reserved Font Name: "Lato".

Copyright © Raph Levien, <http://levien.com/>, with Reserved Font Name: "Inconsolata".

inverse

# 1. About this Guide

This guide covers the configuration of network devices in order to integrate them with PacketFence in VLAN enforcement. Switches, wireless controllers and wireless access points are all considered network devices in PacketFence's terms.

The latest version of this guide is available at <https://packetfence.org/documentation/>

## 1.1. Other sources of information

### Clustering Guide

Covers installation in a clustered environment.

### Developer's Guide

Covers API, captive portal customization, application code customizations and instructions for supporting new equipment.

### Installation Guide

Covers installation and configuration of PacketFence.

### Upgrade Guide

Covers compatibility related changes, manual instructions and general notes about upgrading.

### PacketFence News

Covers noteworthy features, improvements and bug fixes by release.

These files are included in the package and release tarballs.

## 2. Note on Inline enforcement support

There is no need to follow the instructions in this guide if you plan on deploying in inline enforcement, except RADIUS inline. In this case all you need to do is to have a flat layer 2 network up to PacketFence's inline interface with no other gateway available for devices to reach out to the Internet.

This technique is usually used when your network hardware does not support VLAN enforcement.

### 3. Note on RADIUS accounting

Enabling RADIUS accounting on your network devices will significantly increase the database size and may cause performance issues. You should be aware of this and only use RADIUS accounting if it is really needed.

## 4. List of supported Network Devices

PacketFence supports a whole lot of different wireless and wired network equipment from various vendors running different versions. Since we want to provide the most accurate information and avoid duplication of that same information, please refer to our website <https://packetfence.org/about.html#/material>

You'll find on this page the enforcement modes supported by each and every single piece of equipment we tested and worked with.

# 5. Switch configuration

## 5.1. Assumptions

Throughout this configuration example we use the following assumptions for our network infrastructure:

- PacketFence is fully configured with FreeRADIUS running (if you want 802.1X or MAC Auth)
- PacketFence IP address: 192.168.1.5
- Normal VLAN: 1
- Registration VLAN: 2
- Isolation VLAN: 3
- MAC Detection VLAN: 4
- Guest VLAN: 5
- VoIP, Voice VLAN: 100
- use SNMP v2c
- SNMP Read community: public
- SNMP Write community: private
- SNMP Trap community: public
- RADIUS Secret: useStrongerSecret

## 5.2. 3COM

### 5.2.1. SuperStack 3 Switch 4200 and 4500

PacketFence supports these 3Com switches *without VoIP* using one trap type:

- linkUp===linkDown
- Port Security (with static MACs)

Don't forget to update the startup config!

**linkUp === linkDown only**

Global config settings:

```
snmp-agent
snmp-agent target-host trap address udp-domain 192.168.1.5 params securityname
public
snmp-agent trap enable standard linkup linkdown
```

On each interface:

```
port access vlan 4
```

## In Port Security

Global config settings:

```
snmp-agent
snmp-agent target-host trap address udp-domain 192.168.1.5 params securityname
public
snmp-agent trap enable
port-security enable
port-security trap addresslearned
port-security trap intrusion
```

On each interface:

```
port access vlan 4
port-security max-mac-count 1
port-security port-mode secure
port-security intrusion-mode blockmac
undo enable snmp trap updown
```

## In MAC Auth

```
Voice vlan : 6
Normal vlan : 1
Registration vlan : 2
Isolation vlan : 3
```

Global config settings:

```
lldp enable
lldp timer tx-interval 5
lldp compliance cdp
lldp compliance cdp
```

```
port-security enable
MAC-authentication domain packetfence
```

```
radius scheme system
radius scheme packetfence
  server-type extended
  primary authentication 192.168.1.5
  primary accounting 192.168.1.5
  key authentication P@cketfence
  key accounting cipher P@cketfence
  user-name-format without-domain
```

```
domain packetfence
  authentication radius-scheme packetfence
  accounting radius-scheme packetfence
  vlan-assignment-mode string
  accounting optional
domain system
```

```
voice vlan mac-address f4ea-6700-0000 mask ffff-ff00-0000 description Cisco IP
Phone
undo voice vlan security enable
voice vlan 6 enable
```

On each interface with VoIP:

```
interface Ethernet1/0/1
  stp edged-port enable
  lldp compliance admin-status cdp txrx
  port link-type hybrid
  port hybrid vlan 6 tagged
  port hybrid vlan 1 2 3 untagged
  undo voice vlan mode auto
  voice vlan enable
  port-security max-mac-count 3
  port-security port-mode mac-authentication
  port-security intrusion-mode blockmac
  undo enable snmp trap updown
```

## 5.2.2. E4800G

PacketFence supports these 3Com switches with the following techniques:

- 802.1X with MAC Authentication fallback
- linkUp/linkDown (not recommended)

Voice over IP support was not explicitly tested during implementation however it does not mean



that it won't work.

Don't forget to update the startup config!

### linkUp / linkDown only

Global config settings:

```
snmp-agent
snmp-agent target-host trap address udp-domain 192.168.1.5 params securityname
public
snmp-agent trap enable standard linkup linkdown
```

On each interface:

```
port access vlan 4
```

### 802.1X with MAC Authentication fallback

Global config settings:

```
system-view
radius scheme PacketFence
  primary authentication 192.168.1.5 1812
  primary accounting 192.168.1.5 1812
  key authentication useStrongerSecret
  user-name-format without-domain
quit
domain packetfence.local
  authentication default radius-scheme PacketFence
  authorization default radius-scheme PacketFence
quit
domain default enable packetfence.local
dot1x authentication-method eap
port-security enable
quit
```

If your management authentication on your switch is default, applying the configuration above will have your authentication switch to a RADIUS based one with PacketFence as the authentication server. **It is almost certain that you do not want that!**

Below, we will just create a local password for **vtty** accesses (telnet) and nothing on the console. **In order to avoid locking yourself out, make sure to verify your configuration!**

```
system-view
user-interface aux 0
  authentication-mode none
```

```
user-interface vty 0 4
  user privilege level 3
  set authentication password simple useStrongerPassword
quit
quit
```

On each interface:

```
system-view
interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/xx
  port-security port-mode mac-else-userlogin-secure-ext
  # userlogin-secure-or-mac-ext could be used below instead
  # see the Switch_4200G's documentation for a discussion about it
  undo enable snmp trap updown
quit
quit
```

where **xx** stands for the interface index.

### 5.2.3. E5500G and Switch 4200G

PacketFence supports these 3Com switches with the following techniques:

- 802.1X with MAC Authentication fallback
- linkUp/linkDown (not recommended)

Voice over IP support was not explicitly tested during implementation however it does not mean that it won't work.

Don't forget to update the startup config !

#### linkUp / linkDown only

Global config settings:

```
snmp-agent
snmp-agent target-host trap address udp-domain 192.168.1.5 params
securityname public
snmp-agent trap enable standard linkup linkdown
```

On each interface:

```
port access vlan 4
```

## 802.1X with MAC Authentication fallback

Global config settings:

```
system-view
  radius scheme PacketFence
    server-type standard
    primary authentication 192.168.1.5 1812
    primary accounting 192.168.1.5 1812
    accounting optional
    key authentication useStrongerSecret
    user-name-format without-domain
  quit
domain packetfence.local
  radius-scheme PacketFence
  vlan-assignment-mode string
  quit
domain default enable packetfence.local
dot1x authentication-method eap
port-security enable
quit
```

If your management authentication on your switch is default, applying the configuration above will have your authentication switch to a RADIUS based one with PacketFence as the authentication server. **It is almost certain that you do not want that!**

Below, we will just create a local password for **vtty** accesses (telnet) and nothing on the console. **In order to avoid locking yourself out, make sure to verify your configuration!**

```
system-view
  user-interface aux 0
    authentication-mode none
  user-interface vty 0 4
    user privilege level 3
    set authentication password simple useStrongerPassword
  quit
quit
```

On each interface:

```
system-view
  interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/xx
    port-security port-mode mac-else-userlogin-secure-ext
    # userlogin-secure-or-mac-ext could be used below instead
    # see the Switch_4200G's documentation for a discussion about it
    undo enable snmp trap updown
  quit
```

```
quit
```

where **xx** stands for the interface index

## 5.2.4. NJ220

This switch does not support port-security.

To configure: use web interface to send the linkUp/linkDown traps to the PacketFence server.

## 5.3. Alcatel

### 5.3.1. OS6250, OS6450

PacketFence supports this switch using 802.1X, Mac authentication and also supports VoIP.

#### Global configuration

First define any VLAN that you want to use on the switch.

```
vlan 2  
vlan 5  
vlan 20  
vlan 100
```

Next, configure the RADIUS server to be PacketFence

```
aaa radius-server "packetfence" host 192.168.1.5 key useStrongerSecret  
aaa authentication mac packetfence  
aaa authentication 802.1X packetfence
```

You now need to configure a user profile (equivalent of a role) that will determine which VLAN is assigned to the device. In this case the profile names are 'unreg', 'employee' and 'guest'.

```
aaa user-network-profile name unreg vlan 2  
aaa user-network-profile name guest vlan 5  
aaa user-network-profile name employee vlan 20
```

Next, configure the switch in PacketFence. In the case of this example, the uplink is port 1/1.

```
[192.168.1.10]  
mode=production  
description=alcatel  
type=Alcatel  
radiusSecret=useStrongerSecret
```

```
uplink_dynamic=0
uplink=1001
RoleMap=Y
VlanMap=N
registrationRole=unreg
isolationRole=unreg
defaultRole=employee
guestRole=guest
```

## 802.1X

First, make sure you followed the steps above in 'Global configuration'

You will need to configure the ports you want to do authentication on.

```
vlan port mobile 1/2
vlan port 1/2 802.1X enable
802.1X 1/2 supplicant policy authentication pass group-mobility block fail
block
802.1X 1/2 non-supplicant policy authentication pass group-mobility block fail
block
```

## MAC Authentication

First, make sure you followed the steps above in 'Global configuration' and '802.1X'

Next configure the interface to bypass 802.1X authentication

```
802.1X 1/2 supplicant bypass enable
```

## VoIP

PacketFence supports VoIP on Alcatel by having multiple devices using multiple untagged VLANs on the same port.

First configure the user profile for voice. In this example it is only isolating it on another VLAN but any user profile attributes can be added to the profile.

```
aaa user-network-profile name voice vlan 3
```

Next, make sure you enable VoIP in the switch configuration in PacketFence and configure the voiceRole.

```
[192.168.1.10]
VoIPEnabled=Y
```

```
voiceRole=voice
```

### 5.3.2. OS6860

PacketFence supports this switch using 802.1X, Mac authentication and also supports VoIP.

**NOTE** | This documentation is made for Alcatel OS 8.1+. Lower versions do not support this configuration.

#### Global configuration

First define any VLAN that you want to use on the switch.

```
vlan 2 admin-state enable
vlan 5 admin-state enable
vlan 20 admin-state enable
vlan 100 admin-state enable
```

Next, configure the RADIUS server to be PacketFence

```
aaa radius-server "packetfence" host 192.168.1.5 key useStrongerSecret
aaa device-authentication mac packetfence
aaa device-authentication 802.1X packetfence
```

You now need to configure an edge profile (equivalent of a role) that will determine which VLAN is assigned to the device. In this case the profile names are 'unreg', 'employee' and 'guest'.

```
unp edge-profile unreg
unp edge-profile unreg redirect enable
unp edge-profile unreg authentication-flag enable
unp vlan-mapping edge-profile unreg vlan 2
```

```
unp edge-profile guest
unp edge-profile guest redirect enable
unp edge-profile guest authentication-flag enable
unp vlan-mapping edge-profile guest vlan 5
```

```
unp edge-profile employee
unp edge-profile employee redirect enable
unp edge-profile employee authentication-flag enable
unp vlan-mapping edge-profile employee vlan 20
```

**CAUTION** | Make sure you enable the redirect on **all** your roles as the access reevaluation

will not work without it.

Next, configure the switch in PacketFence. In the case of this example, the uplink is port 1/1/1.

```
[192.168.1.10]
mode=production
description=alcatel
type=Alcatel
radiusSecret=useStrongerSecret
uplink_dynamic=0
uplink=1001
RoleMap=Y
VlanMap=N
registrationRole=unreg
isolationRole=unreg
defaultRole=employee
guestRole=guest
```

## MAC Authentication

First, make sure you followed the steps above in 'Global configuration'

You will need to create an edge template and apply it on the ports you want to do authentication on.

```
unp edge-template pf_mab
unp edge-template pf_mab mac-authentication enable
unp edge-template pf_mab classification enable
unp port 1/1/2 port-type edge
unp port 1/1/2 edge-template pf_mab
```

## 802.1X

First, make sure you followed the steps above in 'Global configuration'

You will need to create an edge template and apply it on the ports you want to do authentication on.

```
unp edge-template pf_dot1x
unp edge-template pf_dot1x 802.1X-authentication enable
unp edge-template pf_dot1x mac-authentication enable
unp edge-template pf_dot1x 802.1X-authentication failure-policy mac-
authentication
unp port 1/1/2 port-type edge
unp port 1/1/2 edge-template pf_dot1x
```

## VoIP

PacketFence supports VoIP on Alcatel by having multiple devices using multiple untagged VLANs on the same port.

First configure the edge profile for voice. In this example it is only isolating it on another VLAN but any edge profile attributes can be added to the profile.

```
unp edge-profile voice
unp edge-profile voice redirect enable
unp edge-profile voice authentication-flag enable
unp vlan-mapping edge-profile voice vlan 100
```

Next, make sure you enable VoIP in the switch configuration in PacketFence and configure the voiceRole.

```
[192.168.1.10]
VoIPEnabled=Y
voiceRole=voice
```

## 5.4. AlliedTelesis

### 5.4.1. AT8000GS

PacketFence supports the AT8000GS switch using :

- MAC Authentication
- 802.1X
- 802.1X + VOIP

#### Assumptions

```
PacketFence management IP: 192.168.1.5
Switch management IP: 10.0.0.14
Guest VLAN (Internet): VLAN 1
```

#### MAC Authentication

First, enable 802.1X globally:

```
dot1x system-auth-control
```

Next, configure the RADIUS server and AAA settings:

```
radius-server host 192.168.1.5
```



```
radius-server key useStrongerSecret
radius-server source-ip 10.0.0.14
aaa authentication dot1x default radius
aaa accounting dot1x radius
```

In order to get mac authentication, you need to enable the guest VLAN globally:

```
interface vlan 1
name "Guest Vlan"
dot1x guest-vlan
exit
```

Finally, enable the necessary 802.1X settings for mac-only authentication:

```
interface ethernet g1
dot1x mac-authentication mac-only
dot1x radius-attributes vlan
dot1x port-control auto
dot1x guest-vlan enable
```

## 802.1X

The settings are almost the same as the MAC Authentication with some small differences.

First, enable 802.1X globally:

```
dot1x system-auth-control
```

Next, configure the RADIUS server and AAA settings:

```
radius-server host 192.168.1.5
radius-server key useStrongerSecret
radius-server source-ip 10.0.0.14
aaa authentication dot1x default radius
aaa accounting dot1x radius
```

Finally, enable the necessary 802.1X settings:

```
interface ethernet g1
dot1x radius-attributes vlan
dot1x port-control auto
```

## 802.1X + VOIP

First, enable 802.1X globally:

```
dot1x system-auth-control
```

Next, configure the RADIUS server configuration and AAA settings:

```
radius-server host 192.168.1.5
radius-server key useStrongerSecret
radius-server source-ip 10.0.0.14
aaa authentication dot1x default radius
aaa accounting dot1x radius
```

Then, LLDP configuration:

```
hostname switch-name
ip domain-name domain.local
lldp med network-policy 1 voice vlan 100 vlan-type tagged dscp 34
lldp med network-policy 2 voice-signaling vlan 100 vlan-type tagged dscp 34
```

Finally, enable the necessary 802.1X and VOIP settings on each interface:

```
interface ethernet g1
dot1x port-control force-authorized
no dot1x guest-vlan enable
no dot1x mac-authentication
no dot1x radius-attributes vlan
no dot1x re-authentication
switchport mode trunk
switchport trunk native vlan 5
switchport trunk allowed vlan add 100
lldp med enable network-policy
lldp med network-policy add 1
lldp med network-policy add 2
```

### 802.1X commands

```
show dot1x supplicant brief
```

## 5.4.2. GS950

PacketFence supports the GS950 switch using :

- MAC Authentication
- 802.1X (without fallback to MAC authentication)

## Global configuration

First, ensure that the VLANs you want to assign are part of the VLAN database via the following page:

Allied Telesis AT-GS950/10PS Gigabit Ethernet WebSmart Switch

**Tagged VLAN**

VLAN ID:  (2-4093)  
 VLAN Name:  (32 characters limit)  
 Management VLAN:

Static Tagged

|     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|-----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| All | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
|-----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

Static Untagged

|     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|-----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| All | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
|-----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

Not Member

|     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|-----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| All | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
|-----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|

Apply Clear

| VLAN ID | Name        | VLAN Type | Management | VLAN Action   |
|---------|-------------|-----------|------------|---------------|
| 1       | DefaultVLAN | Permanent | Enabled    | Modify        |
| 3       | 3           | Static    | Disabled   | Modify Delete |
| 20      | 20          | Static    | Enabled    | Modify Delete |
| 156     | 156         | Static    | Disabled   | Modify Delete |
| 157     | 157         | Static    | Disabled   | Modify Delete |

Page 1/1 First Page Previous Page Next Page Last Page Page 00

Note: If a port does not belong to any VLAN, its PVID will be changed to default VLAN ID and attends to default VLAN automatically.

Note that they only need to be tagged on the trunk and don't need any specific configuration for the dynamic VLAN assignment here.

Next, configure the RADIUS server (*Security* → *RADIUS*):

Allied Telesis AT-GS950/10PS Gigabit Ethernet WebSmart Switch

**RADIUS**

Server Priority:  (Highest :1, Lowest :5)  
 Server IP Address:  \* IPv4  
 IPv6  
 Server Port:  (1-65535)  
 Accounting Port:  (1-65535)  
 Shared Secret:  (Maximum length is 32)  
 Add

| Server Priority            | Server IP Address | Server Port | Accounting Port | Shared Secret | Action |
|----------------------------|-------------------|-------------|-----------------|---------------|--------|
| << RADIUS list is empty >> |                   |             |                 |               |        |

Next, configure an SNMP community (*SNMP* → *Community Table*)

Allied Telesis AT-GS950/10PS Gigabit Ethernet WebSmart Switch

**SNMP Community Table**

Community Name:  \* (32 characters limit)  
 User Name(View Policy):  \* (32 characters limit)  
 Add Reset

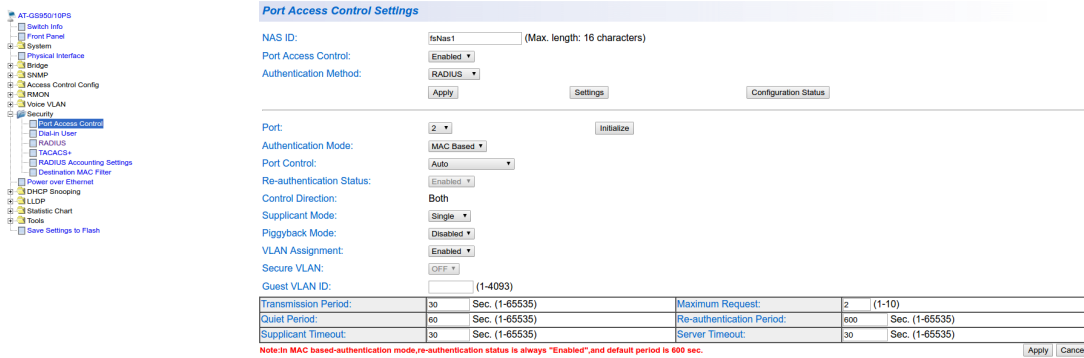
| Community Name                     | User Name(View Policy) | Action |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|--------|
| << snmp community list is empty >> |                        |        |

## MAC authentication

Go in *Security* → *Port Access Control*, select the port you want to enable MAB on, and ensure you set:

- Authentication Mode: MAC Based
- Port Control: Auto
- Supplicant Mode: Single
- VLAN Assignment: Enabled

 Allied Telesis AT-GS950/10PS Gigabit Ethernet WebSmart Switch



**Port Access Control Settings**

NAS ID:  (Max. length: 16 characters)

Port Access Control: **Enabled**

Authentication Method: **RADIUS**

---

Port: **2**

Authentication Mode: **MAC Based**

Port Control: **Auto**

Re-authentication Status: **Enabled**

Control Direction: **Both**

Supplicant Mode: **Single**

Piggyback Mode: **Disabled**

VLAN Assignment: **Enabled**

Secure VLAN: **OFF**

Guest VLAN ID:  (1-4093)

|                      |    |                |                           |     |                |
|----------------------|----|----------------|---------------------------|-----|----------------|
| Transmission Period: | 30 | Sec. (1-65535) | Maximum Request:          | 2   | (1-10)         |
| Quiet Period:        | 60 | Sec. (1-65535) | Re-authentication Period: | 600 | Sec. (1-65535) |
| Supplicant Timeout:  | 30 | Sec. (1-65535) | Server Timeout:           | 30  | Sec. (1-65535) |

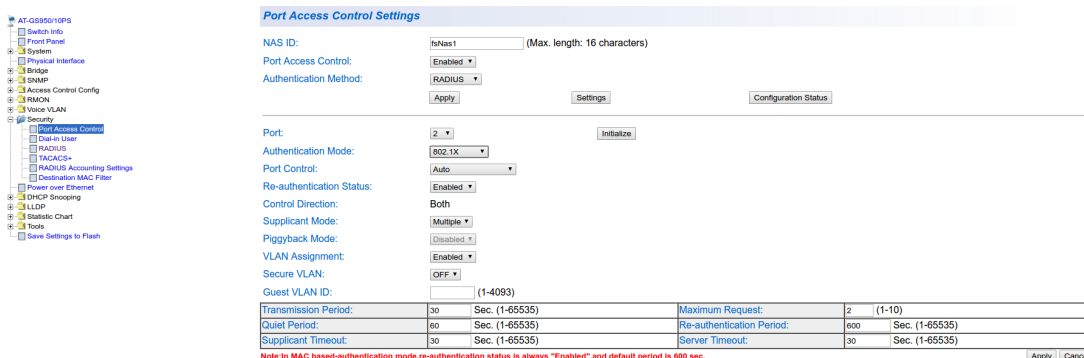
Note: In MAC based-authentication mode, re-authentication status is always "Enabled", and default period is 600 sec.

## 802.1X

Go in *Security* → *Port Access Control*, select the port you want to enable MAB on, and ensure you set:

- Authentication Mode: 802.1X
- Port Control: Auto
- Supplicant Mode: Multiple
- VLAN Assignment: Enabled

 Allied Telesis AT-GS950/10PS Gigabit Ethernet WebSmart Switch



**Port Access Control Settings**

NAS ID:  (Max. length: 16 characters)

Port Access Control: **Enabled**

Authentication Method: **RADIUS**

---

Port: **2**

Authentication Mode: **802.1X**

Port Control: **Auto**

Re-authentication Status: **Enabled**

Control Direction: **Both**

Supplicant Mode: **Multiple**

Piggyback Mode: **Disabled**

VLAN Assignment: **Enabled**

Secure VLAN: **OFF**

Guest VLAN ID:  (1-4093)

|                      |    |                |                           |     |                |
|----------------------|----|----------------|---------------------------|-----|----------------|
| Transmission Period: | 30 | Sec. (1-65535) | Maximum Request:          | 2   | (1-10)         |
| Quiet Period:        | 60 | Sec. (1-65535) | Re-authentication Period: | 600 | Sec. (1-65535) |
| Supplicant Timeout:  | 30 | Sec. (1-65535) | Server Timeout:           | 30  | Sec. (1-65535) |

Note: In MAC based-authentication mode, re-authentication status is always "Enabled", and default period is 600 sec.

## PacketFence configuration

Ensure you configure at least:

- Type: Allied Telesis GS950
- RADIUS secret: useStrongerSecret
- SNMP Version: v2c
- SNMP Community Read: private
- SNMP Community Write: private

If you are using MAC authentication on this switch, you must adjust the FreeRADIUS configuration so it transforms the EAP requests this switch sends into requests that PacketFence will interpret as MAC authentication. This configuration will also set missing attributes in the RADIUS requests since this switch doesn't follow the standard attributes that are usually sent during RADIUS authentication.

To adjust it, go in `/usr/local/pf/conf/radiusd/packetfence` and add the following below the line that contains `packetfence-eap-mac-policy`:

```
packetfence-allied-gs950-mab
```

And then restart FreeRADIUS:

```
# /usr/local/pf/bin/pfcmd service radiusd restart
```

## 5.5. Amer

PacketFence supports Amer switches *without VoIP* using one trap type:

- linkUp/linkDown

Don't forget to update the startup config!

### 5.5.1. L2 Switch SS2R24i

Global config settings:

```
create snmp host 192.168.1.5 v2c public
create snmp user public ReadGroup
enable snmp traps
```

On each interface:

```
config vlan default delete xx
config vlan mac-detection add untagged xx
```

where `xx` stands for the interface index

## 5.6. Aruba

### 5.6.1. Aruba 2930M Serie

The Aruba 2930M is supported by PacketFence and it supports MAC Authentication, 802.1X, Dynamic ACLS and Web Authentication.

#### Global Radius Configuration

```
radius-server host 192.168.1.5 key "useStrongerSecret"  
radius-server host 192.168.1.5 dyn-authorization  
radius-server host 192.168.1.5 time-window 0  
ip source-interface radius vlan 1  
aaa server-group radius "PacketFence" host 10.5.6.100  
aaa accounting network start-stop radius server-group "PacketFence"
```

#### MAC Authentication

```
aaa authentication mac-based chap-radius server-group "PacketFence"  
aaa port-access mac-based 1  
aaa port-access mac-based 1 addr-moves  
aaa port-access mac-based 1 reauth-period 14400
```

#### 802.1x

```
aaa authentication port-access eap-radius server-group "PacketFence"  
aaa port-access authenticator 1  
aaa port-access authenticator 1 tx-period 10  
aaa port-access authenticator 1 client-limit 2  
aaa port-access authenticator active
```

#### MAC Authentication Bypass

```
aaa authentication mac-based chap-radius server-group "PacketFence"  
aaa authentication port-access eap-radius server-group "PacketFence"  
aaa port-access 1 auth-order authenticator mac-based  
aaa port-access mac-based 1  
aaa port-access mac-based 1 addr-moves  
aaa port-access mac-based 1 reauth-period 14400  
aaa port-access authenticator 1  
aaa port-access authenticator 1 tx-period 10  
aaa port-access authenticator 1 client-limit 2  
aaa port-access authenticator active
```

## Web Authentication

```
aaa authentication captive-portal enable
```

On the PacketFence side you will need to fill the "Role by Access List" for the registration role:

```
permit in tcp from any to 192.168.1.5 80
permit in tcp from any to 192.168.1.5 443
deny in tcp from any to any 80 cpy
deny in tcp from any to any 443 cpy
permit in udp from any to any 53
permit in udp from any to any 67
```

And the "Role by Web Auth URL" for the registration role:

```
http://192.168.1.5/Aruba::2930M
```

## Dynamic ACL

The switch needs to be configured to do MAC Authentication and or 802.1x. Then on the PacketFence side in the switch roles, enable "Role by Access List" and fill the appropriate role with the acl you want.

## 5.7. Avaya

Avaya bought Nortel's wired networks assets. So Avaya switches are, in effect, re-branded Nortels. See [Nortel section](#) of this document for configuration instructions.

### 5.7.1. 802.1X with MAC Authentication Bypass and VoIP

#### NOTE

The configuration below requires an ntp server. We use the PacketFence server as the NTP server but any other one will do. If you want to use the PacketFence server for NTP, make sure you install the appropriate service and open port 123 in [/usr/local/pf/conf/iptables.conf](#)

Global config settings:

```
sntp server primary address 192.168.1.5
sntp enable
radius server host 192.168.1.5 acct-enable
radius server host key useStrongerSecret
radius server host key useStrongerSecret used-by eapol
radius server host key useStrongerSecret used-by non-eapol
radius dynamic-server client 192.168.1.5
radius dynamic-server client 192.168.1.5 secret useStrongerSecret
radius dynamic-server client 192.168.1.5 enable
```

```
radius dynamic-server client 192.168.1.5 process-change-of-auth-requests
radius dynamic-server client 192.168.1.5 process-disconnect-requests
```

```
vlan create 2,3,4,5 type port
vlan create 100 type port voice-vlan
vlan name 2 "Reg"
vlan name 3 "Isol"
vlan name 4 "Detect"
vlan name 5 "Guest"
vlan name 100 "Voice"
```

```
#Uplink configuration
vlan ports 24 tagging tagAll
vlan configcontrol autopvid
```

```
eapol multihost allow-non-eap-enable
eapol multihost radius-non-eap-enable
eapol multihost non-eap-phone-enable
eapol multihost use-radius-assigned-vlan
eapol multihost non-eap-use-radius-assigned-vlan
eapol multihost eap-packet-mode unicast
eapol multihost non-eap-reauthentication-enable
eapol multihost adac-non-eap-enable
no eapol multihost non-eap-pwd-fmt ip-addr
no eapol multihost non-eap-pwd-fmt port-number
eapol multihost voip-vlan 1 enable vid 100
```

```
adac voice-vlan 100
adac uplink-port 24
adac op-mode tagged-frames
adac enable
```

```
qos if-group name TrustedLinks class trusted
qos if-assign port ALL name TrustedLinks
```

Port 1 configuration:

```
interface FastEthernet ALL
vlan ports 1 tagging tagAll
vlan members 2,3,4,5 1
vlan ports 1 pvid 2
```



```
eapol multihost port 1 enable eap-mac-max 8 allow-non-eap-enable non-eap-mac-
max 8 radius-non-eap-enable use-radius-assigned-vlan non-eap-use-radius-
assigned-vlan eap-packet-mode unicast adac-non-eap-enable
eapol port 1 status auto traffic-control in re-authentication enable
eapol port 1 radius-dynamic-server enable
lldp port 1 vendor-specific avaya dot1q-framing tagged
no adac detection port 1 mac
adac port 1 tagged-frames-tagging tag-all
adac port 1 enable
spanning-tree port 1 learning fast
```

## 5.8. Brocade

**NOTE** | By default, all disconnections will be done using SNMP.

### 5.8.1. ICX 6400 Series

Those switches are supported using 802.1X for networks with or without VoIP.

- Global config settings:

```
aaa authentication dot1x default radius
radius-server host 192.168.1.5 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813 default
radius-server key useStrongerSecret
```

```
vlan 1 name DEFAULT-VLAN by port
!
vlan 100 by port
tagged ethe 1/1/xx ethe 1/1/yy
```

Where **xx** and **yy** represent the range of ports where you want PacketFence enforcement.

#### MAC-Authentication without VoIP

- Enable MAC-Authentication globally

```
mac-authentication enable
mac-authentication mac-vlan-dyn-activation
```

- Enable MAC-Authentication on each interface you want PacketFence active

```
mac-authentication enable
mac-authentication enable-dynamic-vlan
```

## MAC-Authentication with VoIP

- Enable cdp globally

```
cdp run
```

- Apply the following configuration on each interface you want PacketFence active

```
dual-mode
mac-authentication enable
mac-authentication enable-dynamic-vlan
voice-vlan 100
cdp enable
```

## 802.1X/MAC-Auth

- Enable 802.1X globally

```
dot1x-enable
re-authentication
enable ethe 1/1/xx
```

Where **xx** is the switch port number

- Apply the following configuration on each interface you want PacketFence active

```
dot1x port-control auto
dual-mode
mac-authentication enable
mac-authentication enable-dynamic-vlan
voice-vlan 100
```

## 5.8.2. Firmware 08.0.80 and above

### 802.1x/MAC-Auth

Those switches are supported using 802.1X for networks with or without VoIP.

- RADIUS server configuration

```
radius-server host 192.168.1.5 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813 default key
useStrongerSecret dot1x mac-auth no-login
```

- Authentication configuration

```

aaa authentication dot1x default radius
authentication
  auth-default-vlan 2
  re-authentication
  auth-fail-action restricted-vlan
  dot1x enable
  dot1x enable ethe 1/1/1
  dot1x port-control auto ethe 1/1/1
  dot1x macauth-override
  dot1x timeout tx-period 3
  dot1x timeout quiet-period 2
  mac-authentication enable
  mac-authentication enable ethe 1/1/1

```

The configuration above enables authentication on port 1/1/1 - make sure you change this to the ports where you want to perform enforcement.

- SNMP configuration

```

snmpserver community public ro
snmpserver community private rw

```

- PacketFence configuration

While configuring the switch in PacketFence, ensure you set at least the following values: \* Definition, Type: Brocade Switches \* RADIUS, Secret Passphrase: useStrongerSecret \* SNMP, Version: v2c \* SNMP, Community Read: public \* SNMP, Community Write: private

## VoIP

In order to enable VoIP, you first need to enable LLDP then define the network policy for tagging VoIP traffic on the ports where PacketFence is enabled.

```

lldp run
lldp med network-policy application voice tagged vlan 5 priority 5 dscp 46
ports ethe 1/1/1

```

**NOTE** | Make sure you change VLAN 5 to the VLAN you use for VoIP

- PacketFence configuration

While configuring the switch in PacketFence, ensure you set at least the following values: \* Roles, voice VLAN: 5 \* Definition, VoIP: enabled

### 5.8.3. Radius CLI Login

If you want to use the server PacketFence to authenticate users on the Brocade switch.

- Configure the radius server to send user authentication request to PacketFence

```
aaa authentication login default radius local
```

**NOTE**

Make sure to have a local account in case the switch can not reach the PacketFence server

## 5.9. Cisco

PacketFence supports Cisco switches with VoIP using three different trap types:

- linkUp/linkDown
- MAC Notification
- Port Security (with static MACs)

You also need to make sure that lldp or cdp notification is configured on all ports that will handle VoIP.

On some recent models, we can also use more secure and robust features like:

- MAC Authentication (Cisco's MAC Authentication Bypass or MAB)
- 802.1X (Multi-Host or Multi-Domain)

Depending of the switch model, we recommend the use of the most secure and reliable feature first. In other words, you should consider the following order:

1. 802.1X/MAB
2. Port-Security
3. linkUp/linkDown

### 5.9.1. 2900XL / 3500XL Series

#### SNMP | linkUP/linkDown

Global config settings:

```
snmp-server community public RO
snmp-server community private RW
snmp-server enable traps snmp linkdown linkup
snmp-server enable traps mac-notification
snmp-server host 192.168.1.5 trap version 2c public snmp mac-notification
mac-address-table notification interval 0
mac-address-table notification
mac-address-table aging-time 3600
```

On each interface *without* VoIP:

```
switchport mode access
switchport access vlan 4
snmp trap mac-notification added
```

On each interface *with VoIP*:

```
switchport trunk encapsulation dot1q
switchport trunk native vlan 4
switchport mode trunk
switchport voice vlan 100
snmp trap mac-notification added
snmp trap mac-notification removed
```

## 5.9.2. Cisco IOS

This switch module is built for switches using Cisco IOS versions earlier than 12.2(46)SE. This provides support for PortSecurity for networks with or without VoIP.

### PortSecurity for IOS earlier than 12.2(46)SE

Global config settings:

```
snmp-server community public RO
snmp-server community private RW
snmp-server enable traps port-security
snmp-server enable traps port-security trap-rate 1
snmp-server host 192.168.1.5 version 2c public port-security
```

On each interface *without VoIP*:

```
switchport access vlan 4
switchport port-security
switchport port-security maximum 1 vlan access
switchport port-security violation restrict
switchport port-security mac-address 0200.000x.xxxx
```

where **xxxxx** stands for the interface **ifIndex**

On each interface with VoIP:

```
switchport voice vlan 100
switchport access vlan 4
switchport port-security
switchport port-security maximum 2
```

```
switchport port-security maximum 1 vlan access
switchport port-security violation restrict
switchport port-security mac-address 0200.000x.xxxx
```

where **xxxxx** stands for the interface **ifIndex**

**NOTE** *ifIndex mapping*  
Use the following templates for interface **IfIndex** in bogus MAC addresses (0200.000x.xxxx):

- Fa0/1...Fa0/48 → 10001...10048
- Gi0/1...Gi0/48 → 10101...10148

### 5.9.3. Cisco IOS 12.x

Those versions are now supported using 802.1X for networks with or without VoIP. You can also use port-security with static MAC address but we can not secure a MAC on the data VLAN specifically so enable it if there is no VoIP, use linkUp/linkDown and MAC notification otherwise. So on setup that needs to handle VoIP with this switch, go with a 802.1X configuration. Note: This module is renamed from the old 2950 module and therefore inherits all its capabilities.

#### 802.1X

**WARNING** Make sure that you have a local account, because enabling 802.1X or MAB will ask for a username and password on the next login.

Global config settings:

```
dot1x system-auth-control
```

AAA configuration:

```
aaa new-model
aaa group server radius packetfence
  server 192.168.1.5 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
aaa authentication login default local
aaa authentication dot1x default group packetfence
aaa authorization network default group packetfence
```

AAA configuration (accounting):

```
aaa accounting dot1x default start-stop group packetfence
```

RADIUS server configuration:

```
radius-server host 192.168.1.5 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813 timeout 2
```

```
key useStrongerSecret
radius-server vsa send authentication
```

On each interface *without VoIP*:

```
switchport access vlan 4
switchport mode access
dot1x port-control auto
dot1x host-mode multi-host
dot1x reauthentication
```

On each interface *with VoIP*:

```
switchport access vlan 4
switchport mode access
switchport voice vlan 100
dot1x port-control auto
dot1x host-mode multi-host
dot1x reauthentication
```

## Port-Security

### CAUTION

With port-security, if no MAC is connected on ports when activating port-security, we need to secure bogus MAC addresses on ports in order for the switch to send a trap when a new MAC appears on a port. On the other hand, if a MAC is actually connected when you enable port security, you must secure this MAC rather than the bogus one. Otherwise this MAC will lose its connectivity instantly.

Global config settings *without VoIP*:

```
snmp-server enable traps port-security
snmp-server enable traps port-security trap-rate 1
snmp-server host 192.168.1.5 version 2c public port-security
```

On each interface *without VoIP*:

```
switchport mode access
switchport access vlan 4
switchport port-security
switchport port-security violation restrict
switchport port-security mac-address 0200.0000.00xx
```

where **xx** stands for the interface **ifIndex**.

**NOTE**

*ifIndex mapping*

Use the following templates for interface **IfIndex** in bogus MAC addresses (0200.0000.00xx):

- Fa0/1, ..., Fa0/48 [?] 1, ..., 48
- Gi0/1, Gi0/2 [?] 49, 50

Global config settings *with VoIP*:

```
snmp-server community public RO
snmp-server community private RW
snmp-server enable traps snmp linkdown linkup
snmp-server enable traps mac-notification
snmp-server host 192.168.1.5 trap version 2c public snmp mac-notification
mac-address-table notification interval 0
mac-address-table notification
mac-address-table aging-time 3600
```

On each interface *with VoIP*:

```
switchport voice vlan 100
switchport access vlan 4
switchport mode access
snmp trap mac-notification added
snmp trap mac-notification removed
```

#### 5.9.4. 3550 (802.1X with MAB)

**CAUTION**

The Catalyst 3550 does **not** support 802.1X with Multi-Domain, it can only support 802.1X with MAB using Multi-Host, MAB, and port security.

**CAUTION**

The Catalyst 3550 does **not** support CoA. [Minimal IOS required for CoA is 12.2\(52\)SE](#). Latest available IOS for 3550 is 12.2(46)SE. Set "Deauthentication Method" to "SNMP" in PacketFence Administration GUI under *Configuration* → *Policies and Access Control* → *Network Devices* → *Switches* for the switch IP configured below.

Global settings:

```
dot1x system-auth-control
aaa new-model
aaa group server radius packetfence
  server 192.168.1.5 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
aaa authentication login default local
aaa authentication dot1x default group packetfence
aaa authorization network default group packetfence
```



RADIUS server configuration:

```
radius-server host 192.168.1.5 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813 timeout 2 key
useStrongerSecret
radius-server vsa send authentication
```

Enable SNMP on the switch:

```
snmp-server community public RO
snmp-server community private RW
```

On each interface:

```
switchport mode access
dot1x mac-auth-bypass
dot1x pae authenticator
dot1x port-control auto
dot1x violation-mode protect
dot1x timeout quiet-period 2
dot1x timeout reauth-period 7200
dot1x timeout tx-period 3
dot1x reauthentication
```

### 5.9.5. Cisco IOS 15.0

This switch module is built for switches using Cisco IOS versions 15.0 or greater. Note: This module is renamed from the old 2960 module and therefore inherits all its capabilities.

**CAUTION** | For 802.1X and MAB configurations, refer to [this section below](#).

#### PortSecurity for IOS 12.2(46)SE or greater

Since version PacketFence 2.2.1, the way to handle VoIP when using port-security dramatically changed. Ensure that you follow the instructions below. To make the story short, instead on relying on the dynamic MAC learning for VoIP, we use a static entry on the voice VLAN so we can trigger a new security violation, and then authorize the phone MAC address on the network.

Global config settings:

```
snmp-server community public RO
snmp-server community private RW
snmp-server enable traps port-security
snmp-server enable traps port-security trap-rate 1
snmp-server host 192.168.1.5 version 2c public port-security
```

On each interface *without* VoIP:

```
switchport access vlan 4
switchport port-security
switchport port-security maximum 1 vlan access
switchport port-security violation restrict
switchport port-security mac-address 0200.000x.xxxx
```

where **xxxxx** stands for the interface **ifIndex**

On each interface *with VoIP*:

```
switchport voice vlan 100
switchport access vlan 4
switchport port-security
switchport port-security maximum 2
switchport port-security maximum 1 vlan access
switchport port-security maximum 1 vlan voice
switchport port-security violation restrict
switchport port-security mac-address 0200.010x.xxxx vlan voice
switchport port-security mac-address 0200.000x.xxxx vlan access
```

where **xxxxx** stands for the interface **ifIndex**

**NOTE** *ifIndex mapping*  
Use the following templates for interface **IfIndex** in bogus MAC addresses (0200.000x.xxxx):

- Fa0/1...Fa0/48 → 10001...10048
- Gi0/1...Gi0/48 → 10101...10148

2960, 2970, 3560, 3750

**NOTE** You shouldn't use any port-security features when doing 802.1X and/or MAC Authentication. This can cause unexpected behavior.

**WARNING** Make sure that you have a local account, because enabling 802.1X or MAB will ask for a username and password on the next login.

**WARNING** When doing 802.1X and network interface teaming on the same switch or stack, you might consider using the mac-move feature of the Cisco switches. When you authenticate the primary link of the team, the virtual MAC address will be published and authorized on the switchport. When something breaks on that link (ie. cable disconnected), the teaming driver will publish the MAC address on the secondary link, and the switch will try to authorize it. However, since the switch already has the MAC address in a session on another switchport, the switch will put the secondary link into err-disabled mode.

To prevent this behavior, you need to tell the switch to allow MAC address movements between ports. The global command is the following:

```
authentication mac-move permit
```

#### Global settings:

```
dot1x system-auth-control
aaa new-model
aaa group server radius packetfence
  server name pfnac
aaa authentication login default local
aaa authentication dot1x default group packetfence
aaa authorization network default group packetfence
```

#### RADIUS server configuration:

```
radius server pfnac
  address ipv4 192.168.1.5 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
  automate-tester username dummy ignore-acct-port idle-time 3
  key 0 useStrongerSecret
```

```
radius-server vsa send authentication
```

#### CoA configuration

```
aaa server radius dynamic-author
  client 192.168.1.5 server-key useStrongerSecret
  port 3799
```

#### Activate SNMP v1 on the switch:

```
snmp-server community public RO
```

#### 802.1X with MAC Authentication bypass (MultiDomain)

##### On each interface:

```
switchport mode access
switchport voice vlan 100
authentication host-mode multi-domain
authentication order dot1x mab
authentication priority dot1x mab
authentication port-control auto
```

```
authentication periodic
authentication timer restart 10800
authentication timer reauthenticate 10800
authentication violation replace
mab
no snmp trap link-status
dot1x pae authenticator
dot1x timeout quiet-period 2
dot1x timeout tx-period 3
```

## 802.1X with MAC Authentication bypass (MultiHost)

On each interface:

```
switchport mode access
authentication order dot1x mab
authentication priority dot1x mab
authentication port-control auto
authentication periodic
authentication timer restart 10800
authentication timer reauthenticate 7200
authentication violation replace
mab
no snmp trap link-status
dot1x pae authenticator
dot1x timeout quiet-period 2
dot1x timeout tx-period 3
```

## MAC Authentication bypass only

On each interface:

```
switchport mode access
switchport voice vlan 100
dot1x mac-auth-bypass
dot1x pae authenticator
dot1x port-control auto
dot1x timeout tx-period 5
dot1x reauthentication
authentication periodic
authentication timer restart 10800
authentication timer reauthenticate 7200
authentication violation replace
mab
no snmp trap link-status
```

802.1X on various models of 2960

There's a lot of different versions of the Catalyst 2960. Some of them may not accept the command stated in this guide for 802.1X.

We have found a couple of commands that are working great for MAB:

On each interface

**NOTE**

```
switchport mode access
authentication order mab
authentication port-control auto
mab
dot1x pae authenticator
```

But, as it is difficult for us to maintain the whole list of commands to configure each and every different model of 2960 with different IOS, please refer to Cisco documentation for very specific cases.

## Web auth

The Catalyst 2960 supports web authentication from IOS 12.2.55SE3. This procedure has been tested on IOS 15.0.2SE5.

In this example, the ACL that triggers the redirection to the portal for registration is 'registration'.

Configure the global configuration of the switch using the section *MAC Authentication bypass only* of Cisco IOS 15.0 in this document.

Then add this additional configuration on the global level

```
ip device tracking
ip http server
ip http secure-server
snmp-server community public RO
snmp-server community private RW
```

Add the required access lists

```
ip access-list extended registration
deny ip any host <your captive portal ip>
permit tcp any any eq www
permit tcp any any eq 443
```

Then on each controlled interface

```
switchport access vlan <vlan>
switchport mode access
authentication priority mab
```

```
authentication port-control auto
authentication periodic
authentication violation replace
mab
spanning-tree portfast
```

PacketFence switch configuration

- Select the type to 'Cisco IOS 15.0'
- Set the 'Registration' role to 'registration' (If left empty then it will use the role name)
- Set Role by Web Auth URL for registration to 'http://<your\_captive\_portal\_ip>/Cisco::Cisco\_IOS\_15\_0'
- The URL can contain dynamic parameters, like the MAC address (\$mac), the switch IP (\$switch\_ip), the username (\$user\_name).
- Screenshots of this configuration are available in the Cisco WLC section of this guide.

## Dynamic ACLs

The Cisco IOS 15.5 supports RADIUS pushed ACLs which means that you can define the ACLs centrally in PacketFence without configuring them in your switches and their rules will be applied to the switch during the authentication.

These ACLs are defined by role like the VLANs which means you can define different ACLs for your registration VLAN, production VLAN, guest VLAN, etc.

Add the following configuration setting on the global level

```
ip device tracking
```

For IOS 12.2, you need to create this acl and assign it to the switch port interface:

```
ip access-list extended Auth-Default-ACL
permit udp any range bootps 65347 any range bootpc 65348
permit udp any any range bootps 65347
permit udp any any eq domain
deny ip any any
```

```
interface GigabitEthernetx/y/z
...
ip access-group Auth-Default-ACL in
...
```

Before continuing, configure your switch to be in MAC authentication bypass or 802.1X.

Now in the PacketFence interface go in the switch configuration and in the Roles tab.

Check 'Role by access list' and you should now be able to configure the access lists as below.

For example if you want the users that are in the registration VLAN to only use HTTP, HTTPS, DNS and DHCP you can configure this ACL in the registration category.

Role by Access List

```
registration permit tcp any any eq www
              permit udp any any eq domain
              permit udp any eq bootpc any eq bootps
              deny ip any any
```

isolation

macDetection

inline

REJECT

default

gaming

guest

voice

Now if for example, your normal users are placed in the 'default' category and your guests in the 'guest' category.

If for example the 'default' category uses the network 192.168.5.0/24 and your guest network uses the network 192.168.10.0/24.

You can prevent communications between both networks using these access lists

Role by Access List

registration permit tcp any any eq www  
permit udp any any eq domain  
permit udp any eq bootpc any eq bootps  
deny ip any any

isolation

macDetection

inline

REJECT

default deny tcp any 192.168.10.0 255.255.255.0  
permit ip any any

gaming

guest deny tcp any 192.168.5.0 255.255.255.0  
permit ip any any

voice

You could also only prevent your guest users from using shared directories



Role by Access List

registration  
permit tcp any any eq www  
permit udp any any eq domain  
permit udp any eq bootpc any eq bootps  
deny ip any any

isolation

macDetection

inline

REJECT

default

gaming

guest  
deny tcp any any eq 445  
deny tcp any any eq 139  
permit ip any any

voice

Or also you could restrict your users to use only your DNS server where 192.168.5.2 is your DNS server

Role by Access List

registration  
permit tcp any any eq www  
permit udp any any eq domain  
permit udp any eq bootpc any eq bootps  
deny ip any any

isolation

macDetection

inline

REJECT

default  
permit udp any host 192.168.5.2 eq domain  
deny udp any any domain  
permit ip any any

gaming

guest

voice

## 5.9.6. Cisco IOS 15.5

**CAUTION** | For 802.1X and MAB configurations, refer to [this section below](#).

## PortSecurity for IOS 12.2(46)SE or greater

Since version PacketFence 2.2.1, the way to handle VoIP when using port-security dramatically changed. Ensure that you follow the instructions below. To make the story short, instead on relying on the dynamic MAC learning for VoIP, we use a static entry on the voice VLAN so we can trigger a new security violation, and then authorize the phone MAC address on the network.

Global config settings:

```
snmp-server community public RO
snmp-server community private RW
snmp-server enable traps port-security
snmp-server enable traps port-security trap-rate 1
snmp-server host 192.168.1.5 version 2c public port-security
```

On each interface *without* VoIP:

```
switchport access vlan 4
switchport port-security
switchport port-security maximum 1 vlan access
switchport port-security violation restrict
switchport port-security mac-address 0200.000x.xxxx
```

where **xxxxx** stands for the interface **ifIndex**

On each interface *with* VoIP:

```
switchport voice vlan 100
switchport access vlan 4
switchport port-security
switchport port-security maximum 2
switchport port-security maximum 1 vlan access
switchport port-security maximum 1 vlan voice
switchport port-security violation restrict
switchport port-security mac-address 0200.010x.xxxx vlan voice
switchport port-security mac-address 0200.000x.xxxx vlan access
```

where **xxxxx** stands for the interface **ifIndex**

**NOTE**

*ifIndex* mapping

Use the following templates for interface **IfIndex** in bogus MAC addresses (0200.000x.xxxx):

- Fa0/1...Fa0/48 → 10001...10048
- Gi0/1...Gi0/48 → 10101...10148

2960, 2970, 3560, 3750

**NOTE** | You shouldn't use any port-security features when doing 802.1X and/or MAC Authentication. This can cause unexpected behavior.

**WARNING** | Make sure that you have a local account, because enabling 802.1X or MAB will ask for a username and password on the next login.

**WARNING** | When doing 802.1X and network interface teaming on the same switch or stack, you might consider using the mac-move feature of the Cisco switches. When you authenticate the primary link of the team, the virtual MAC address will be published and authorized on the switchport. When something breaks on that link (ie. cable disconnected), the teaming driver will publish the MAC address on the secondary link, and the switch will try to authorize it. However, since the switch already has the MAC address in a session on another switchport, the switch will put the secondary link into err-disabled mode.

To prevent this behavior, you need to tell the switch to allow MAC address movements between ports. The global command is the following:

```
authentication mac-move permit
```

Global settings:

```
dot1x system-auth-control
aaa new-model
aaa group server radius packetfence
  server name pfnac
aaa authentication login default local
aaa authentication dot1x default group packetfence
aaa authorization network default group packetfence
```

RADIUS server configuration:

```
radius server pfnac
  address ipv4 192.168.1.5 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
  automate-tester username dummy ignore-acct-port idle-time 3
  key 0 useStrongerSecret
```

```
radius-server vsa send authentication
```

CoA configuration

```
aaa server radius dynamic-author
  client 192.168.1.5 server-key useStrongerSecret
```

```
port 3799
```

Activate SNMP v1 on the switch:

```
snmp-server community public RO
```

## 802.1X with MAC Authentication bypass (MultiDomain)

On each interface:

```
switchport mode access
switchport voice vlan 100
authentication host-mode multi-domain
authentication order dot1x mab
authentication priority dot1x mab
authentication port-control auto
authentication periodic
authentication timer restart 10800
authentication timer reauthenticate 10800
authentication violation replace
mab
no snmp trap link-status
dot1x pae authenticator
dot1x timeout quiet-period 2
dot1x timeout tx-period 3
```

## 802.1X with MAC Authentication bypass (MultiHost)

On each interface:

```
switchport mode access
authentication order dot1x mab
authentication priority dot1x mab
authentication port-control auto
authentication periodic
authentication timer restart 10800
authentication timer reauthenticate 7200
authentication violation replace
mab
no snmp trap link-status
dot1x pae authenticator
dot1x timeout quiet-period 2
dot1x timeout tx-period 3
```

## MAC Authentication bypass only

On each interface:

```
switchport mode access
switchport voice vlan 100
dot1x mac-auth-bypass
dot1x pae authenticator
dot1x port-control auto
dot1x timeout tx-period 5
dot1x reauthentication
authentication periodic
authentication timer restart 10800
authentication timer reauthenticate 7200
authentication violation replace
mab
no snmp trap link-status
```

*802.1X on various models of 2960*

There's a lot of different versions of the Catalyst 2960. Some of them may not accept the command stated in this guide for 802.1X.

We have found a couple of commands that are working great or MAB:

On each interface

### NOTE

```
switchport mode access
authentication order mab
authentication port-control auto
mab
dot1x pae authenticator
```

But, as it is difficult for us to maintain the whole list of commands to configure each and every different model of 2960 with different IOS, please refer to Cisco documentation for very specific cases.

## Web auth

The Catalyst 2960 supports web authentication from IOS 12.2.55SE3. This procedure has been tested on IOS 15.0.2SE5.

In this example, the ACL that triggers the redirection to the portal for registration is 'registration'.

Configure the global configuration of the switch using the section *MAC Authentication bypass only* of Cisco IOS 15.5 in this document.

Then add this additional configuration on the global level

```
ip device tracking
```

```
ip http server
ip http secure-server
snmp-server community public RO
snmp-server community private RW
```

Add the required access lists

```
ip access-list extended registration
deny ip any host <your captive portal ip>
permit tcp any any eq www
permit tcp any any eq 443
```

Then on each controlled interface

```
switchport access vlan <vlan>
switchport mode access
authentication priority mab
authentication port-control auto
authentication periodic
authentication violation replace
mab
spanning-tree portfast
```

PacketFence switch configuration

- Select the type to 'Cisco IOS 15.5'
- Set the 'Registration' role to 'registration' (If left empty then it will use the role name)
- Set Role by Web Auth URL for registration to 'http://<your\_captive\_portal\_ip>/Cisco::Cisco\_IOS\_15\_5'
- The URL can contain dynamic parameters, like the MAC address (\$mac), the switch IP (\$switch\_ip), the username (\$user\_name).
- Screenshots of this configuration are available in the Cisco WLC section of this guide.

## Dynamic ACLs

The Cisco IOS 15.5 supports RADIUS pushed ACLs which means that you can define the ACLs centrally in PacketFence without configuring them in your switches and their rules will be applied to the switch during the authentication.

These ACLs are defined by role like the VLANs which means you can define different ACLs for your registration VLAN, production VLAN, guest VLAN, etc.

Add the following configuration setting on the global level

```
ip device tracking
```

For IOS 12.2, you need to create this acl and assign it to the switch port interface:

```
ip access-list extended Auth-Default-ACL
  permit udp any range bootps 65347 any range bootpc 65348
  permit udp any any range bootps 65347
  permit udp any any eq domain
  deny ip any any
```

```
interface GigabitEthernetx/y/z
  ...
  ip access-group Auth-Default-ACL in
  ...
```

Before continuing, configure your switch to be in MAC authentication bypass or 802.1X.

Now in the PacketFence interface go in the switch configuration and in the Roles tab.

Check 'Role by access list' and you should now be able to configure the access lists as below.

For example if you want the users that are in the registration VLAN to only use HTTP, HTTPS, DNS and DHCP you can configure this ACL in the registration category.



Role by Access List

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| registration | <pre>permit tcp any any eq www permit udp any any eq domain permit udp any eq bootpc any eq bootps deny ip any any</pre> |
| isolation    |  |
| macDetection |  |
| inline       |  |
| REJECT       |  |
| default      |  |
| gaming       |  |
| guest        |  |
| voice        |  |

Now if for example, your normal users are placed in the 'default' category and your guests in the 'guest' category.

If for example the 'default' category uses the network 192.168.5.0/24 and your guest network uses the network 192.168.10.0/24.

You can prevent communications between both networks using these access lists

Role by Access List

registration permit tcp any any eq www  
permit udp any any eq domain  
permit udp any eq bootpc any eq bootps  
deny ip any any

isolation

macDetection

inline

REJECT

default deny tcp any 192.168.10.0 255.255.255.0  
permit ip any any

gaming

guest deny tcp any 192.168.5.0 255.255.255.0  
permit ip any any

voice

You could also only prevent your guest users from using shared directories

Role by Access List

registration  
permit tcp any any eq www  
permit udp any any eq domain  
permit udp any eq bootpc any eq bootps  
deny ip any any

isolation

macDetection

inline

REJECT

default

gaming

guest  
deny tcp any any eq 445  
deny tcp any any eq 139  
permit ip any any

voice

Or also you could restrict your users to use only your DNS server where 192.168.5.2 is your DNS server

Role by Access List

registration  
permit tcp any any eq www  
permit udp any any eq domain  
permit udp any eq bootpc any eq bootps  
deny ip any any

isolation

macDetection

inline

REJECT

default  
permit udp any host 192.168.5.2 eq domain  
deny udp any any domain  
permit ip any any

gaming

guest

voice

## Downloadable ACLs

Starting from IOS 15.2, Cisco switches supports Downloadable ACLs. The size of the radius packet limit the number of ACLs a switch can receive from a single Access-Accept answer, so Cisco Switches supports Downloadable ACLs which mean that the RADIUS server will do

multiples Access-Challenge to send the complete ACL.

Use the Cisco::Cisco\_IOS\_15\_5 switch module to use the DACLs method and use the same Global settings as the 'Dynamic ACLs' section above.

Add the following configuration setting on the global level

```
ip device tracking
```

## Web auth and Dynamic ACLs

It's possible to mix web authentication and downloadable ACLs starting from version 12.2 of the IOS, each roles can be configured to forward the device to the captive portal for an http or an https and only allow specific traffic with the ACL. To do that, you need to configure PacketFence with Role by Web Auth URL and with Role by access list (For each role you need). On the switch you need to change the Auth-Default-ACL to add the portal IP address:

For IOS 12.2:

```
ip access-list extended Auth-Default-ACL
 permit udp any range bootps 65347 any range bootpc 65348
 permit udp any any range bootps 65347
 permit ip any host ip_of_the_captive_portal
 permit udp any any eq domain
 deny ip any any
```

And assign this ACL on the switch port yo want to do ACL per port.

```
interface GigabitEthernetx/y/z
 ...
 ip access-group Auth-Default-ACL in
 ...
```

For IOS 15.0:

```
Extended IP access list Auth-Default-ACL
 10 permit udp any range bootps 65347 any range bootpc 65348
 20 permit udp any any range bootps 65347
 30 deny ip any any
```

```
conf t
 ip access-list extend Auth-Default-ACL
 21 permit ip any host ip_of_the_captive_portal
```

For IOS 15.2:

```
Extended IP access list Auth-Default-ACL
 10 permit udp any any eq domain
 20 permit tcp any any eq domain
 30 permit udp any eq bootps any
 40 permit udp any any eq bootpc
 50 permit udp any eq bootpc any
 60 deny ip any any
```

```
conf t
ip access-list extend Auth-Default-ACL
51 permit ip any host ip_of_the_captive_portal
```

### 5.9.7. Stacked 29xx, Stacked 35xx, Stacked 3750, 4500 Series, 6500 Series

The 4500 Series and all the stacked switches work exactly the same way as if they were not stacked so the configuration is the same: they support port-security with static MAC address and allow us to secure a MAC on the data VLAN so we enable it whether there is VoIP or not.

We need to secure bogus MAC addresses on ports in order for the switch to send a trap when a new MAC appears on a port.

Global config settings

```
snmp-server community public RO
snmp-server community private RW
snmp-server enable traps port-security
snmp-server enable traps port-security trap-rate 1
snmp-server host 192.168.1.5 version 2c public port-security
```

On each interface *without* VoIP:

```
switchport access vlan 4
switchport port-security
switchport port-security maximum 1 vlan access
switchport port-security violation restrict
switchport port-security mac-address 0200.000x.xxxx
```

On each interface *with* VoIP:

```
switchport voice vlan 100
switchport access vlan 4
switchport port-security
switchport port-security maximum 2
switchport port-security maximum 1 vlan access
```

```
switchport port-security violation restrict
switchport port-security mac-address 0200.000x.xxxx
```

where **xxxxx** stands for the interface **ifIndex**

**NOTE**

*ifIndex mapping*

Use the following templates for interface **IfIndex** in bogus MAC addresses (0200.000x.xxxx):

- Fa1/0/1...Fa1/0/48 → 10001...10048
- Gi1/0/1...Gi1/0/48 → 10101...10148
- Fa2/0/1...Fa2/0/48 → 10501...10548
- Gi2/0/1...Gi2/0/48 → 10601...10648
- Fa3/0/1...Fa3/0/48 → 11001...11048
- Gi3/0/1...Gi3/0/48 → 11101...11148
- Fa4/0/1...Fa4/0/48 → 11501...11548
- Gi4/0/1...Gi4/0/48 → 11601...11648
- ...

## 5.9.8. IOS XE Switches

PacketFence supports the IOS XE switches in MAC Authentication Bypass, 802.1X and web authentication.

### MAC Authentication Bypass

Global config settings:

```
dot1x system-auth-control
```

On each interface:

```
authentication host-mode multi-domain
authentication order mab
authentication priority mab
authentication port-control auto
authentication periodic
authentication timer restart 10800
authentication timer reauthenticate 10800
authentication violation replace
mab
no snmp trap link-status
dot1x pae authenticator
dot1x timeout quiet-period 2
dot1x timeout tx-period 3
```

AAA groups and configuration:

```
aaa new-model
aaa group server radius packetfence
  server 192.168.1.5 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
aaa authentication login default local
aaa authentication dot1x default group packetfence
aaa authorization network default group packetfence
```

RADIUS server configuration:

```
radius-server host 192.168.1.5 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813 timeout 2 key
useStrongerSecret
radius-server vsa send authentication
```

CoA configuration:

```
aaa server radius dynamic-author
  client 192.168.1.5 server-key useStrongerSecret
  port 3799
```

Activate SNMP on the switch:

```
snmp-server community public RO
```

### 802.1X only

Follow the same configuration as for MAC Authentication Bypass but change the **authentication priority** line with the following:

```
authentication priority dot1x
```

### 802.1X with MAC Authentication fallback

Follow the same configuration as for MAC Authentication Bypass but change the **authentication priority** line with the following:

```
authentication priority dot1x mab
```

### Web auth

Web auth requires at least MAC Authentication Bypass to be activated on the switchport but can also work with 802.1X. Configure your switchports as you would usually do, then add the following access lists.



```
ip access-list extended redirect
deny ip any host 192.168.1.5
deny udp any any eq domain
deny tcp any any eq domain
deny udp any any eq bootpc
deny udp any any eq bootps
permit tcp any any eq www
permit tcp any any eq 443
ip access-list extended registered
permit ip any any
```

Global config settings:

```
ip device tracking
```

PacketFence switch configuration:

- Select the type to 'Cisco IOS 15.5'
- Set the 'Registration' role to 'registration' (If left empty then it will use the role name)
- Set Role by Web Auth URL for registration to 'http://<your\_captive\_portal\_ip>/Cisco::Cisco\_IOS\_15\_5'
- The URL can contain dynamic parameters, like the MAC address (\$mac), the switch IP (\$switch\_ip), the username (\$user\_name).
- Screenshots of this configuration are available in the Cisco WLC section of this guide.

#### NOTE

AAA authentication is slow to come up after a reload of the IOS XE switches. This makes the recovery from a reboot longer to complete. This is due to a bug in IOS XE. A workaround is to execute the following command `no aaa accounting system default start-stop group tacacs+`.

## Identity Networking Policy

Starting from version 15.2(1)E (IOS) and 3.4.0E (IOSXE) , Cisco introduced the Identity Based Networking Services. It means that you can create an authentication workflow on the switch and create interfaces templates.

To enable it:

```
authentication display new-style
```

Global config settings:

```
dot1x system-auth-control
```

AAA groups and configuration:

```
aaa new-model
aaa group server radius packetfence
  server name packetfence
!
aaa authentication login default local
aaa authentication dot1x default group packetfence
aaa authorization network default group packetfence
radius-server vsa send authentication
```

RADIUS server configuration:

```
radius-server dead-criteria time 5 tries 4
radius-server deadtime 1
radius server packetfence
  address ipv4 192.168.1.5 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
  key useStrongerSecret
  automate-tester username cisco ignore-acct-port idle-time 1
```

CoA configuration:

```
aaa server radius dynamic-author
  client 192.168.1.5 server-key useStrongerSecret
  port 3799
```

Enable SNMP on the switch:

```
snmp-server community public RO
```

Enable HTTP and HTTPS server:

```
ip http server
ip http secure-server
```

Enable IP device tracking:

```
ip device tracking
```

Fallback ACL:

```
ip access-list extended ACL-CRITICAL-V4
  permit ip any any
```

Service Template:

```
service-template DEFAULT_LINKSEC_POLICY_MUST_SECURE
service-template DEFAULT_LINKSEC_POLICY_SHOULD_SECURE
service-template DEFAULT_CRITICAL_VOICE_TEMPLATE
  voice vlan
service-template CRITICAL_AUTH_VLAN
service-template CRITICAL-ACCESS
  description *Fallback Policy on AAA Fail*
  access-group ACL-CRITICAL-V4
!
```

Class map:

```
class-map type control subscriber match-any IN_CRITICAL_AUTH
match activated-service-template DEFAULT_CRITICAL_VOICE_TEMPLATE
match activated-service-template CRITICAL_AUTH_VLAN
match activated-service-template CRITICAL-ACCESS
!
class-map type control subscriber match-none NOT_IN_CRITICAL_AUTH
match activated-service-template DEFAULT_CRITICAL_VOICE_TEMPLATE
match activated-service-template CRITICAL_AUTH_VLAN
match activated-service-template CRITICAL-ACCESS
!
class-map type control subscriber match-all AAA_SVR_DOWN_UNAUTHD_HOST
match result-type aaa-timeout
match authorization-status unauthorized
!
class-map type control subscriber match-all AAA_SVR_DOWN_AUTHD_HOST
match result-type aaa-timeout
match authorization-status authorized
!
class-map type control subscriber match-all DOT1X_NO_RESP
match method dot1x
match result-type method dot1x agent-not-found
!
class-map type control subscriber match-all MAB_FAILED
match method mab
match result-type method mab authoritative
!
class-map type control subscriber match-all DOT1X_FAILED
match method dot1x
match result-type method dot1x authoritative
```

Policy map:

On the 3 following configurations if the RADIUS server is down then we will apply

CRITICAL\_AUTH\_VLAN, DEFAULT\_CRITICAL\_VOICE\_TEMPLATE and CRITICAL-ACCESS service template. If the RADIUS server goes up then it reinitializes the authentication if the port is in IN\_CRITICAL\_VLAN.

for 802.1X with MAC Authentication fallback:

```
policy-map type control subscriber DOT1X_MAB
  event session-started match-all
    10 class always do-until-failure
      10 authenticate using dot1x priority 10
  event authentication-failure match-first
    5 class DOT1X_FAILED do-until-failure
      10 terminate dot1x
      20 authenticate using mab priority 20
    10 class AAA_SVR_DOWN_UNAUTHD_HOST do-until-failure
      10 activate service-template CRITICAL_AUTH_VLAN
      20 activate service-template DEFAULT_CRITICAL_VOICE_TEMPLATE
      30 activate service-template CRITICAL-ACCESS
      40 authorize
      50 pause reauthentication
    20 class AAA_SVR_DOWN_AUTHD_HOST do-until-failure
      10 activate service-template CRITICAL_AUTH_VLAN
      20 activate service-template DEFAULT_CRITICAL_VOICE_TEMPLATE
      30 activate service-template CRITICAL-ACCESS
      40 pause reauthentication
      50 authorize
    30 class DOT1X_NO_RESP do-until-failure
      10 terminate dot1x
      20 authenticate using mab priority 20
    40 class MAB_FAILED do-until-failure
      10 terminate mab
      20 authentication-restart 10800
    60 class always do-until-failure
      10 terminate dot1x
      20 terminate mab
      30 authentication-restart 10800
  event agent-found match-all
    10 class always do-until-failure
      10 terminate mab
      20 authenticate using dot1x priority 10
  event aaa-available match-all
    10 class IN_CRITICAL_AUTH do-until-failure
      10 clear-session
    20 class NOT_IN_CRITICAL_AUTH do-until-failure
      10 resume reauthentication
  event inactivity-timeout match-all
    10 class always do-until-failure
      10 clear-session
```

```

event authentication-success match-all
  10 class always do-until-failure
    10 activate service-template DEFAULT_LINKSEC_POLICY_SHOULD_SECURE
event violation match-all
  10 class always do-all
  10 replace

```

for MAC Authentication only:

```

policy-map type control subscriber MACAUTH
event session-started match-all
  10 class always do-until-failure
    10 authenticate using mab priority 10
event authentication-failure match-first
  10 class AAA_SVR_DOWN_UNAUTHD_HOST do-until-failure
    10 activate service-template CRITICAL_AUTH_VLAN
    20 activate service-template DEFAULT_CRITICAL_VOICE_TEMPLATE
    30 activate service-template CRITICAL-ACCESS
    40 authorize
    50 pause reauthentication
  20 class AAA_SVR_DOWN_AUTHD_HOST do-until-failure
    10 activate service-template CRITICAL_AUTH_VLAN
    20 activate service-template DEFAULT_CRITICAL_VOICE_TEMPLATE
    30 activate service-template CRITICAL-ACCESS
    40 pause reauthentication
    50 authorize
  30 class always do-until-failure
    10 terminate mab
    20 authentication-restart 30
event aaa-available match-all
  10 class IN_CRITICAL_AUTH do-until-failure
    10 clear-session
  20 class NOT_IN_CRITICAL_AUTH do-until-failure
    10 resume reauthentication
event inactivity-timeout match-all
  10 class always do-until-failure
    10 clear-session
event authentication-success match-all
  10 class always do-until-failure
    10 activate service-template DEFAULT_LINKSEC_POLICY_SHOULD_SECURE

```

for 802.1X only:

```

policy-map type control subscriber DOT1X
event session-started match-all
  10 class always do-until-failure

```

```

    10 authenticate using dot1x priority 10
event authentication-failure match-first
    10 class AAA_SVR_DOWN_UNAUTHD_HOST do-until-failure
        10 activate service-template CRITICAL_AUTH_VLAN
        20 activate service-template DEFAULT_CRITICAL_VOICE_TEMPLATE
        30 activate service-template CRITICAL-ACCESS
        40 authorize
        50 pause reauthentication
    20 class AAA_SVR_DOWN_AUTHD_HOST do-until-failure
        10 activate service-template CRITICAL_AUTH_VLAN
        20 activate service-template DEFAULT_CRITICAL_VOICE_TEMPLATE
        30 activate service-template CRITICAL-ACCESS
        40 pause reauthentication
        50 authorize
    30 class DOT1X_FAILED do-until-failure
        10 terminate dot1x
    40 class DOT1X_NO_RESP do-until-failure
        10 terminate dot1x
    60 class always do-until-failure
        10 terminate dot1x
        20 authentication-restart 10800
event agent-found match-all
    10 class always do-until-failure
        10 authenticate using dot1x priority 10
event aaa-available match-all
    10 class IN_CRITICAL_AUTH do-until-failure
        10 clear-session
    20 class NOT_IN_CRITICAL_AUTH do-until-failure
        10 resume reauthentication
event inactivity-timeout match-all
    10 class always do-until-failure
        10 clear-session
event authentication-success match-all
    10 class always do-until-failure
        10 activate service-template DEFAULT_LINKSEC_POLICY_SHOULD_SECURE

```

Interface Template (802.1X MAC Authentication):

```

template identity-template-mab
dot1x pae authenticator
spanning-tree portfast edge
switchport access vlan 1
switchport mode access
switchport voice vlan 100
mab
access-session host-mode multi-domain
access-session control-direction in

```

```
access-session closed
access-session port-control auto
authentication periodic
authentication timer reauthenticate server
service-policy type control subscriber DOT1X_MAB
```

Interface Template (MAC Authentication):

```
template identity-template-macauth
dot1x pae authenticator
spanning-tree portfast edge
switchport access vlan 1
switchport mode access
switchport voice vlan 100
mab
access-session host-mode single-host
access-session control-direction in
access-session closed
access-session port-control auto
authentication periodic
authentication timer reauthenticate server
service-policy type control subscriber MACAUTH
```

Interface Template (802.1X):

```
template identity-template-dot1x
dot1x pae authenticator
spanning-tree portfast edge
switchport access vlan 1
switchport mode access
switchport voice vlan 100
mab
access-session host-mode single-host
access-session control-direction in
access-session closed
access-session port-control auto
authentication periodic
authentication timer reauthenticate server
service-policy type control subscriber DOT1X
```

On each interface for 802.1X with MAC Authentication:

```
source template identity-template-mab
dot1x timeout tx-period 5
```

On each interface for MAC Authentication:

```
source template identity-template-macauth
```

On each interface for 802.1X:

```
source template identity-template-dot1x
dot1x timeout tx-period 5
```

To see what is the status of a port let's run:

```
sh access-session interface fastEthernet 0/2 details
  Interface: FastEthernet0/2
  MAC Address: 101f.74b2.f6a5
  IPv6 Address: Unknown
  IPv4 Address: 172.20.20.49
  User-Name: ACME\bob
  Status: Authorized
  Domain: DATA
  Oper host mode: multi-domain
  Oper control dir: in
  Session timeout: 12380s (server), Remaining: 12206s
  Timeout action: Terminate
  Common Session ID: AC14872900000000C000F8B7A
  Acct Session ID: Unknown
  Handle: 0x9C000001
  Current Policy: DOT1X_MAB
```

Local Policies:

```
Service Template: DEFAULT_LINKSEC_POLICY_SHOULD_SECURE (priority 150)
```

Server Policies:

```
Vlan Group: Vlan: 20
Idle timeout: 30 sec
```

Method status list:

| Method | State |
|--------|-------|
|--------|-------|

|       |               |
|-------|---------------|
| dot1x | Authc Success |
|-------|---------------|



Debug command:

In order to be able to debug the Identity Networking Policy you can launch the following command in the switch cli:

```
term mon
debug pre all
```

## DHCP Option 82

In order to enable the DHCP Option 82, you need to add the following parameters. Let's say you want to enable it for the vlan 1 to 1024:

```
ip dhcp snooping
ip dhcp snooping vlan 1-1024
```

On uplink interfaces:

```
ip dhcp snooping trust
```

## Router ISR 1800 Series

PacketFence supports the 1800 series Router with linkUp / linkDown traps. It cannot do anything about the router interfaces (ie: fa0 and fa1 on a 1811). VLAN interfaces `ifIndex` should also be marked as uplinks in the PacketFence switch configuration as they generate traps but are of no interest to PacketFence (layer 3).

Global config settings:

```
snmp-server enable traps snmp linkdown linkup
snmp-server host 192.168.1.5 trap version 2c public
```

On each interface:

```
switchport mode access
switchport access vlan 4
```

## 5.9.9. EAP-FAST authentication Support

PacketFence supports Cisco NEAT through EAP-MD5, EAP-FAST, EAP-GTC and EAP-MSCHAPv2 authentication methods. Upon successful authentication against PacketFence, the authenticator switch will give trunk access to the supplicant switch.

Here is an official Cisco guide, from which the following configuration derives:  
<https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/docs/lan-switching/8021x/116681-config-neat-cise-00.html>

The following configuration example contains required changes to be applied on both authenticator and supplicant switches to provide EAP-FAST authentication against PacketFence.

## Authenticator

Global settings:

```
aaa group server radius packetfence
  server 192.168.1.5 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
aaa authentication dot1x default group packetfence
aaa authorization network default group packetfence
```

```
cisp enable
```

Uplink configuration:

```
interface FastEthernet0/20
  switchport mode access
  authentication port-control auto
  dot1x pae authenticator
```

## Supplicant

Global settings (replace username and password):

```
cisp enable
```

```
eap profile EAP_PRO
  method fast
```

```
dot1x credentials EAP_PRO
  username switches
  password 7 03174C02120C29495D
  ! Password is switches
  !
  dot1x supplicant force-multicast
```

Uplink settings:

```
interface GigabitEthernet1/0/24
  switchport mode trunk
  dot1x pae supplicant
```

```
dot1x credentials EAP_PRO
dot1x supplicant eap profile EAP_PRO
```

### 5.9.10. Device Sensor for Cisco Equipment

Device sensor is a way to be able to receive some information about endpoints from the RADIUS accounting packet. (like DHCP, CDP, LLDP and HTTP information) In order to enable Device Sensor feature, you need to add the following parameters to your switch configuration:

```
radius server packetfence
address ipv4 192.168.1.5 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
key useStrongerSecret
```

```
aaa group server radius packetfence
  server name packetfence
!
aaa accounting update newinfo
aaa accounting identity default start-stop group packetfence
!
!
device-sensor filter-list dhcp list dhcp-list
  option name host-name
  option name parameter-request-list
  option name class-identifier
!
device-sensor filter-list lldp list lldp-list
  tlv name system-description
!
device-sensor filter-list cdp list cdp-list
  tlv name version-type
  tlv name platform-type
!
device-sensor filter-list dhcp list lldp-list
device-sensor filter-spec dhcp include list dhcp-list
device-sensor filter-spec lldp include list lldp-list
device-sensor filter-spec cdp include list cdp-list
device-sensor notify all-changes
```

This configuration will make the switch send information about DHCP, LLDP and CDP of the endpoint in the RADIUS accounting packets.

## 5.10. Cisco Small Business (SMB)

The Cisco Small Business switches support MAC based authentication (MAB) as well as 802.1X and VoIP. Both technologies can be combined and will work correctly together on the same switchport.

Nothing is required to activate VoIP on the switch, you must simply configure the voice VLAN you want PacketFence to assign in the PacketFence switch configuration as well as enabling VoIP there. Note that your phones must **not** tag their packets on the network and should send their traffic untagged when connected into a PacketFence enabled port. This means you should not have the voice VLAN capabilities enabled on the switch itself as they might conflict with the authorization attributes returned by PacketFence.

### 5.10.1. Global configuration

#### CAUTION

Before executing these steps, make sure you have a local account configured to login on the switch or are pointing to a RADIUS server for management. Otherwise, you will not be able to login into the switch anymore.

You must first define your RADIUS server and point it to PacketFence:

```
dot1x system-auth-control
radius-server key useStrongerSecret
radius-server host 192.168.1.5
```

```
aaa accounting dot1x start-stop group radius
```

```
snmp-server community public ro view Default
snmp-server community private rw view Default
```

SNMP configuration for the Cisco SG300:

```
snmp-server community public ro view DefaultSuper
snmp-server community private rw view DefaultSuper
```

### 5.10.2. MAC Authentication

In order to configure MAC authentication, you must enable it on each interface

```
interface x/y/z
dot1x host-mode multi-sessions
dot1x reauthentication
dot1x timeout reauth-period 10800
dot1x timeout quiet-period 10
dot1x timeout server-timeout 5
dot1x timeout supp-timeout 3
dot1x authentication mac
dot1x radius-attributes vlan
dot1x port-control auto
spanning-tree portfast
switchport mode general
```

```
switchport general pvid 2
```

### 5.10.3. 802.1X with MAB

In order to configure 802.1X with a fall-back to MAC authentication, you must enable it on each interface

```
interface x/y/z
  dot1x host-mode multi-sessions
  dot1x reauthentication
  dot1x timeout quiet-period 10
  dot1x timeout server-timeout 5
  dot1x timeout supp-timeout 3
  dot1x authentication dot1x mac
  dot1x radius-attributes vlan
  dot1x port-control auto
  spanning-tree portfast
  switchport mode general
  switchport general pvid 2
```

Once you have configured your switchports, you must configure the switch in PacketFence with the following information:

- Definition → Type: **Cisco SG500**
- Definition → Mode: **production**
- Definition → Deauthentication Method: **SNMP**
- Definition → VoIP enabled if you need VoIP on this switch.
- Roles → voice VLAN set to the VLAN you want to assign to the VoIP devices connecting to this switch.
- RADIUS → Secret Passphrase: **useStrongerSecret**
- SNMP → Version: **v2c**
- SNMP → Community Read: **public**
- SNMP → Community Write: **private**

### 5.10.4. 802.1X commands

```
show dot1x
show dot1x users
```

## 5.11. D-Link

PacketFence supports D-Link switches without VoIP using two different trap types:

- linkUp/linkDown

- MAC Notification

We recommend to enable linkUp/linkDown and MAC notification together.

Don't forget to update the startup config!

### 5.11.1. DES3526 / 3550

Global config settings

```
To be contributed...
```

On each interface:

```
To be contributed...
```

### 5.11.2. DGS3100/3200

Enable MAC notification:

```
enable mac_notification
config mac_notification interval 1 historysize 1
config mac_notification ports 1:1-1:24 enable
```

Enable linkup/linkdown notification:

```
enable snmp traps
enable snmp linkchange_traps
```

Add SNMP host:

```
create snmp host 192.168.1.5 v2c public
```

Enable MAC base access control:

```
enable mac_based_access_control
config mac_based_access_control authorization attributes radius enable local
disable
config mac_based_access_control method radius
config mac_based_access_control password useStrongerSecret
config mac_based_access_control password_type manual_string
config mac_based_access_control max_users no_limit
config mac_based_access_control trap state enable
```

```
config mac_based_access_control log state enable
```

On each interface:

```
config mac_based_access_control ports 1:1 state enable
config mac_based_access_control ports 1:1 max_users 128
config mac_based_access_control ports 1:1 aging_time 1440
config mac_based_access_control ports 1:1 block_time 300
config mac_based_access_control ports 1:1 mode host_based
```

## 5.12. Dell

### NOTE

When doing MAC Authentication, there is a known issue with some Dell switches. If you get errors where the device is using EAP type MD5, but PacketFence is expecting PEAP, you will need to edit the line **default\_eap\_type = peap** under the section **eap** in the file `/usr/local/pf/conf/radiusd/eap.conf` to **default\_eap\_type = md5**.

### 5.12.1. Force 10

PacketFence supports this switch using RADIUS, MAC-Authentication and 802.1X.

Global config settings

```
radius-server host 192.168.1.5 key s3cr3t auth-port 1812
```

MAB interface configuration:

```
interface GigabitEthernet 0/1
no ip address
switchport
dot1x authentication
dot1x mac-auth-bypass
dot1x auth-type mab-only
no shutdown
```

802.1X interface configuration:

```
interface GigabitEthernet 0/1
no ip address
switchport
dot1x authentication
no shutdown
```

## 5.12.2. PowerConnect 3424

PacketFence supports this switch using linkUp/linkDown traps.

Global config settings to define the RADIUS server

```
configure
radius-server host auth 10.34.200.30
name PacketFence
usage 802.1x
key s3cr3t
exit
```

Configure CoA

```
aaa server radius dynamic-author
client 10.34.200.30 server-key s3cr3t
auth-type all
exit
```

Enable authentication and globally enable 802.1x client authentication via RADIUS

```
authentication enable
aaa authentication dot1x default radius
aaa authorization network default radius
dot1x system-auth-control
```

(Optional)

```
dot1x dynamic-vlan enable
```

On the interface, enable MAC based authentication mode, enable MAB, and set the order of authentication to 802.1X followed by MAC authentication. Also enable periodic re-authentication.

```
interface te1/0/4
dot1x port-control mac-based
dot1x mac-auth-bypass
authentication order dot1x mab
dot1x reauthentication
default mab pap
exit
```

```
authentication order mab
```



```
authentication priority mab
```

### 5.12.3. N1500 Series Switch

PacketFence supports this switch using RADIUS, MAC-Authentication, 802.1x and VoIP

#### 802.1X with MAC Authentication fallback and VoIP

We assume that the switch ip is 192.168.1.254

First on the uplink add this configuration:

```
dot1x port-control force-authorized
switchport mode trunk
switchport trunk allowed vlan 1-5,100
```

Global config settings

```
configure
vlan 2,3,4,5,100
vlan 2
name "Registration"
vlan 3
name "Isolation"
vlan 4
name "Mac detection"
vlan 5
name "Guest"
vlan 100
name "VoIP"
```

```
authentication enable
dot1x system-auth-control
aaa authentication dot1x default radius
aaa authorization network default radius
radius server vsa send authentication
dot1x dynamic-vlan enable
voice vlan
aaa server radius dynamic-author
client 192.168.1.5 server-key "useStrongerSecret"
exit
radius-server host auth 192.168.1.5
name "PacketFence"
usage 802.1x
key "useStrongerSecret"
exit
```

```
aaa server radius dynamic-author
client 192.168.1.5 server-key "useStrongerSecret"
exit
```

```
snmp-server community "private" rw
snmp-server community "public" ro
```

On each interface (not uplink)

```
switchport voice detect auto
switchport mode general
switchport access vlan 10
dot1x port-control mac-based
dot1x reauthentication
dot1x mac-auth-bypass
authentication order mab
authentication priority mab
lldp transmit-tlv sys-desc sys-cap
lldp transmit-mgmt
lldp notification
lldp med confignotification
voice vlan 100
exit
```

#### 5.12.4. N1500 Series (FW >= 6.6.0.17)

This configuration has been tested with firmware 6.6.0.17

Global config settings:

```
aaa authentication login "defaultList" local
authentication enable
authentication dynamic-vlan enable
dot1x system-auth-control
aaa authentication dot1x default radius
aaa authorization network default radius
aaa accounting dot1x default start-stop radius
ip device tracking
authentication dynamic-vlan enable
radius server auth 192.168.1.5
key useStrongerSecret
usage authmgr
name "PacketFence"
exit
radius server acct 192.168.1.5
```

```
name "PacketFenceAccounting"  
key useStrongerSecret  
exit  
snmp-server community "private" rw  
snmp-server community "public" ro
```

802.1X/MAB with VoIP interface configuration:

```
switchport voice detect auto  
switchport mode general  
switchport general pvid 2  
switchport general allowed vlan add 1-4093  
authentication host-mode multi-domain  
authentication periodic  
dot1x timeout quiet-period 10  
mab auth-type pap  
authentication order mab  
no authentication allow-unauth dhcp  
lldp tlv-select system-description system-capabilities management-address  
lldp notification  
lldp med confignotification  
switchport voice vlan 100
```

Uplink port:

```
switchport mode trunk  
switchport trunk allowed vlan 1-4096  
authentication port-control force-authorized
```

On other switch ports not managed by PacketFence:

```
switchport mode general  
switchport general pvid x  
switchport general allowed vlan add x  
authentication port-control force-authorized
```

Web-Auth:

```
ip access-list registration  
1000 deny ip any 192.168.1.5 0.0.0.0  
1010 permit tcp any any eq http  
1020 permit tcp any any eq 443
```

### 5.12.5. N1500 Series (FW >= 6.8.0)

Downloadable ACLs:

This configuration has been tested on FW 6.8.1. Important, even if "authentication allow-scrinyacl enable" has been enable on the switch, it doesn't support ACL with source ip and the ACL direction are only in. So, for example, if you have this configured in PacketFence:

```
permit ip 10.0.0.1 host 192.168.3.1
permit ip any any
```

Then you have to convert it to:

```
permit ip any host 192.168.3.1
permit ip any any
```

The configuration needs to be done is the one above (N1500 Series (FW >= 6.6.0.17))

Troubleshooting command:

```
debug console
debug authentication event Gigabitethernet 1/0/1
terminal monitor
show authentication clients gigabitethernet 1/0/1
```

### 5.12.6. N2000 Series (N2024P)

This configuration was tested with firmware version 6.2.1.6

Global config settings:

Radius configuration:

```
aaa authentication login "defaultList" local
authentication enable
dot1x system-auth-control
aaa authentication dot1x default radius
aaa authorization network default radius
dot1x dynamic-vlan enable
radius-server key "useStrongerSecret"
radius-server host auth 192.168.1.5
name "PacketFence"
```

802.1X interface configuration:

```
interface Gi0/0/1
```

```
switchport mode general
switchport general allowed vlan add 1-3,100
dot1x port-control mac-based
dot1x unauth-vlan 2
dot1x mac-auth-bypass
authentication order mab dot1x
voice vlan 100
exit
```

## 5.13. Edge core

PacketFence supports Edge-corE switches without VoIP using linkUp/linkDown traps.

PacketFence also supports MAC authentication on the Edge-corE 4510

### 5.13.1. 3526XA and 3528M

Global config settings

```
SNMP-server host 192.168.1.5 public version 2c udp-port 162
```

### 5.13.2. 4510

Basic configuration

```
network-access aging
snmp-server community private rw
snmp-server community public rw

radius-server 1 host 192.168.1.5 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813 timeout 5
retransmit 2 key useStrongerSecret
radius-server key useStrongerSecret
```

On each controlled interface

```
interface ethernet 1/8
switchport allowed vlan add <your list of allowed vlans> untagged
network-access max-mac-count 1
network-access mode mac-authentication
!
```

## 5.14. Enterasys

PacketFence supports Enterasys switches *without VoIP* using two different trap types:

- linkUp/linkDown
- MAC Locking (Port Security with static MACs)

**We recommend to enable MAC locking only.**

Don't forget to update the startup config!

### 5.14.1. Matrix N3

linkUp/linkDown traps are enabled by default so we disable them and enable MAC locking only. Also, by default this switch doesn't do an electrical low-level linkDown when setting the port to admin down. So we need to activate a global option called **forcelinkdown** to enable this behavior. Without this option, clients don't understand that they lost their connection and they never do a new DHCP on VLAN change.

Global config settings

```
set snmp community public
set snmp targetparams v2cPF user public security-model v2c message-processing
v2c
set snmp notify entryPF tag TrapPF
set snmp targetaddr tr 192.168.1.5 param v2cPF taglist TrapPF
set maclock enable
set forcelinkdown enable
```

On each interface:

```
set port trap ge.1.xx disable
set maclock enable ge.1.xx
set maclock static ge.1.xx 1
set maclock firstarrival ge.1.xx 0
set maclock trap ge.1.xx enable
```

where **xx** stands for the interface index.

### 5.14.2. SecureStack C2

linkUp/linkDown traps are enabled by default so we disable them and enable MAC locking only.

Global config settings

```
set snmp community public
set snmp targetparams v2cPF user public security-model v2c message-processing
v2c
```

```
set snmp notify entryPF tag TrapPF
set snmp targetaddr tr 192.168.1.5 param v2cPF taglist TrapPF
set maclock enable
```

On each interface:

```
set port trap fe.1.xx disable
set maclock enable fe.1.xx
set maclock static fe.1.xx 1
set maclock firstarrival fe.1.xx 0
```

where **xx** stands for the interface index

### 5.14.3. SecureStack C3

This switch has the particular *feature* of allowing more than one untagged egress VLAN per port. This means that you must add all the VLAN created for PacketFence as untagged egress VLAN on the relevant interfaces. This is why there is a VLAN command on each interface below.

linkUp/linkDown traps are enabled by default so we disable them and enable MAC locking only.

Global config settings

```
set snmp community public
set snmp targetparams v2cPF user public security-model v2c message-processing
v2c
set snmp notify entryPF tag TrapPF
set snmp targetaddr tr 192.168.1.5 param v2cPF taglist TrapPF
set maclock enable
```

On each interface:

```
set vlan egress 1,2,3 ge.1.xx untagged
set port trap ge.1.xx disable
set maclock enable ge.1.xx
set maclock static ge.1.xx 1
set maclock firstarrival ge.1.xx 0
set maclock trap ge.1.xx enable
```

where **xx** stands for the interface index

### 5.14.4. Standalone D2

linkUp/linkDown traps are enabled by default so we disable them and enable MAC locking only.

#### CAUTION

This switch Switch accepts multiple untagged VLAN per port when configured through SNMP. This is problematic because on some occasions

the untagged VLAN port list can become inconsistent with the switch's running config. To fix that, clear all untagged VLANs of a port even if the CLI interface doesn't show them. To do so, use: `clear vlan egress <vlans> <ports>`

Global config settings

```
set snmp community public
set snmp targetparams v2cPF user public security-model v2c message-processing
v2c
set snmp notify entryPF tag TrapPF
set snmp targetaddr tr 192.168.1.5 param v2cPF taglist TrapPF
set maclock enable
```

On each interface:

```
set port trap ge.1.xx disable
set maclock enable ge.1.xx
set maclock static ge.1.xx 1
set maclock firstarrival ge.1.xx 0
set maclock trap ge.1.xx enable
```

where `xx` stands for the interface index

## 5.15. Extreme Networks

PacketFence supports Extreme Networks switches using:

- linkUp/linkDown
- MAC Address Lockdown (Port Security)
- Netlogin - MAC Authentication
- Netlogin - 802.1X
- Netlogin - web authentication
- RADIUS authentication for CLI access

Don't forget to save the configuration!

### 5.15.1. All Extreme XOS based switches

In addition to the SNMP and VLANs settings, this switch needs the Web Services to be enabled and an administrative username and password provided in its PacketFence configuration for Web Services.

#### MAC Address Lockdown (Port-Security)

linkUp/linkDown traps are enabled by default so we disable them and enable MAC Address Lockdown only.



Global config settings without Voice over IP (VoIP):

```
enable snmp access
configure snmp add trapreceiver 192.168.1.5 community public
enable web http
configure vlan "Default" delete ports <portlist>
configure vlan registration add ports <portlist> untagged
configure ports <portlist> vlan registration lock-learning
disable snmp traps port-up-down ports <portlist>
```

where **<portlist>** are ports you want to secure. It can be an individual port or a port-range with a dash.

Global config settings with Voice over IP (VoIP):

```
enable snmp access
configure snmp add trapreceiver 192.168.1.5 community public
enable web http
configure vlan "Default" delete ports <portlist>
configure vlan registration add ports <portlist> untagged
configure vlan voice add ports <portlist> tagged
configure ports <portlist> vlan registration lock-learning
configure ports <portlist> vlan voice limit-learning 1
disable snmp traps port-up-down ports <portlist>
```

where **<portlist>** are ports you want to secure. It can be an individual port or a port-range with a dash.

## CoA configuration

Starting from version EXOS 22.1 CoA is supported.

```
configure radius dynamic-authorization 1 server 192.168.1.5 client-ip 10.0.0.8
vr VR-Default shared-secret useStrongerSecret
enable radius dynamic-authorization
```

## MAC Authentication

SNMP configuration

```
enable snmp access snmp-v1v2c
configure snmp add community readonly public
configure snmp add community readwrite private
```

AAA Configuration

```
configure radius netlogin primary server 192.168.1.5 1812 client-ip 10.0.0.8 vr
VR-Default
configure radius netlogin primary shared-secret useStrongerSecret
enable radius netlogin
```

#### Netlogin (MAC Authentication)

```
configure netlogin vlan temp
enable netlogin mac
configure netlogin add mac-list default
configure netlogin dynamic-vlan enable
configure netlogin dynamic-vlan uplink-ports 50
configure netlogin mac authentication database-order radius
enable netlogin ports 1-48 mac
configure netlogin ports 1-48 mode port-based-vlans
configure netlogin ports 1-48 no-restart
```

## 802.1X

#### SNMP configuration

```
enable snmp access snmp-v1v2c
configure snmp add community readonly public
configure snmp add community readwrite private
```

#### AAA Configuration

```
configure radius netlogin primary server 192.168.1.5 1812 client-ip 10.0.0.8 vr
VR-Default
configure radius netlogin primary shared-secret useStrongerSecret
enable radius netlogin
```

#### Netlogin (802.1X)

```
configure netlogin vlan temp
enable netlogin dot1x
configure netlogin dynamic-vlan enable
configure netlogin dynamic-vlan uplink-ports 50
enable netlogin ports 1-48 dot1x
configure netlogin ports 1-48 mode port-based-vlans
configure netlogin ports 1-48 no-restart
configure netlogin mac ports 1-48 timers reauth-period 86400 reauthentication
on
configure netlogin dot1x ports 1-48 timers server-timeout 10 reauth-period
```

### 5.15.2. MAC Authentication + 802.1x

You can mix the MAC Authentication and 802.1X on the same switchport. If the device fails 802.1X authentication, it will fallback to the MAC Authentication. Configure the MAC Authentication and 802.1x like the section above and add this extra command:

```
enable netlogin ports 1-48 dot1x mac
```

#### Policy based access

You can assign policies defined on the switch via PacketFence.

First define your policy in the switch:

```
configure policy profile 1 name "gaming" pvid-status "enable" pvid 3521
untagged-vlans 3521
configure policy profile 2 name "guest" pvid-status "enable" pvid 3522
untagged-vlans 3522
configure policy mactable response both
configure policy vlanauthorization enable
```

Next, in PacketFence, enable 'Role by Switch Role' in your switch configuration and assign the policies to the roles there. They will be returned inside the Filter-Id attribute.

Make sure you use the 'Extreme EXOS' type for your switch to use this feature.

#### Web authentication

SNMP configuration

```
enable snmp access snmp-v1v2c
configure snmp add community readonly public
configure snmp add community readwrite private
```

AAA Configuration

```
configure radius netlogin primary server 192.168.1.5 1812 client-ip 10.0.0.8 vr
VR-Default
configure radius netlogin primary shared-secret useStrongerSecret
enable radius netlogin
```

Web-auth profile

```

configure dns-client add name-server 8.8.8.8 vr VR-Mgmt
configure dns-client add domain-suffix example.com
configure policy captive-portal web-redirect 1 server 1 url
http://192.168.1.5:80/Extreme::EXOS enable
configure policy profile 4 name "Unregistered" pvid-status "enable" pvid 0 web-
redirect 1
configure policy rule 4 ipdestsocket 192.168.1.5 mask 32 forward
configure policy rule 4 udpdestportIP 53 mask 16 forward
configure policy rule 4 udpdestportIP 67 mask 16 forward
configure policy rule 4 ether 0x0806 mask 16 forward
configure policy captive-portal listening 80
configure policy captive-portal listening 443

```

Next, in the switch configuration in PacketFence, enable 'External Portal Enforcement' and 'Role by Switch Role'. Under the 'registration' role, put 'Unregistered'

Make sure you use the 'Extreme EXOS' type for your switch to use this feature.

## RADIUS authentication for CLI access

Configure RADIUS server IP address as primary server and the switch IP address as the client-ip. Be sure to specify the correct virtual router

```

configure radius mgmt-access primary server <SERVER_IP> 1815 client-ip
<CLIENT_IP> vr <VR>

```

Configure the RADIUS shared-secret

```

configure radius mgmt-access primary shared-secret <SHARED_SECRET>

```

Enable RADIUS for management access

```

enable radius mgmt-access

```

## 5.16. Foundry

### 5.16.1. FastIron 4802

PacketFence support this switch with optional VoIP using two different trap types:

- linkUp/linkDown
- Port Security (with static MACs)

**We recommend to enable Port Security only.**

Don't forget to update the startup config!

Those switches support port-security with static MAC address and allow us to secure a MAC on the data VLAN so we enable it whether there is VoIP or not.

We need to secure bogus MAC addresses on ports in order for the switch to send a trap when a new MAC appears on a port.

Global config settings

```
snmp-server host 192.168.1.5 public
no snmp-server enable traps link-down
no snmp-server enable traps link-up
```

On each interface *without* VoIP:

```
int eth xx
  port security
    enable
    maximum 1
    secure 0200.0000.00xx 0
    violation restrict
```

where **xx** stands for the interface **ifIndex**.

With VoIP a little more work needs to be performed. Instead of the no-VoIP, put in the following config:

```
conf t
vlan <mac-detection-vlan>
  untagged eth xx
vlan <voice-vlan>
  tagged eth xx

int eth xx
  dual-mode <mac-detection-vlan>
  port security
    maximum 2
    secure 0200.00xx.xxxx <mac-detection-vlan>
    secure 0200.01xx.xxxx <voice-vlan>
    violation restrict
  enable
```

where **xxxxxx** stands for the interface number (filled with zeros), **<voice-vlan>** with your voice-VLAN number and **<mac-detection-vlan>** with your mac-detection VLAN number.

## 5.17. H3C

### 5.17.1. S5120 Switch series

PacketFence supports these switches with the following technologies:

- 802.1X (with or without VoIP)
- 802.1X with MAC Authentication fallback (with or without VoIP)
- MAC Authentication (with or without VoIP)

#### 802.1X

RADIUS scheme creation:

```
radius scheme packetfence
primary authentication 192.168.1.5 1812 key useStrongerSecret
primary accounting 192.168.1.5 1813 key useStrongerSecret
user-name-format without-domain
```

ISP-Domain creation:

```
domain packetfence
authentication default radius-scheme packetfence
authentication lan-access radius-scheme packetfence
authorization lan-access radius-scheme packetfence
```

SNMP settings:

```
snmp-agent
snmp-agent community read public
snmp-agent community write private
snmp-agent sys-info version v2c
```

Global configuration:

```
port-security enable
dot1x authentication-method eap
```

Global configuration (with VoIP):

Add the following to the previous global configuration.

```
undo voice vlan security enable
lldp compliance cdp
```

Interfaces configuration:

```
port link-type hybrid
port hybrid vlan 5 untagged
port hybrid pvid vlan 5
mac-vlan enable
stp edged-port enable
port-security max-mac-count 1
port-security port-mode userlogin-secure
port-security intrusion-mode blockmac
dot1x re-authenticate
dot1x max-user 1
dot1x guest-vlan 5
undo dot1x handshake
dot1x mandatory-domain packetfence
undo dot1x multicast-trigger
```

Interfaces configuration (with VoIP):

Add the following to the previous interfaces configuration.

```
port hybrid vlan 100 tagged
undo voice vlan mode auto
voice vlan 100 enable
lldp compliance admin-status cdp txrx
port-security max-mac-count 3
dot1x max-user 2
```

### 802.1X with MAC Authentication fallback

Since using MAC Authentication as a fallback of 802.1X, use the previous 802.1X configuration and add the followings.

This configuration is the same with or without VoIP.

Global configuration:

```
mac-authentication domain packetfence
```

Interfaces configuration:

```
mac-authentication guest-vlan 5
port-security port-mode userlogin-secure-or-mac
```

## MAC Authentication

RADIUS scheme creation:

```
radius scheme packetfence
primary authentication 192.168.1.5 1812 key useStrongerSecret
primary accounting 192.168.1.5 1813 key useStrongerSecret
user-name-format without-domain
```

ISP-Domain creation:

```
domain packetfence
authentication default radius-scheme packetfence
authentication lan-access radius-scheme packetfence
authorization lan-access radius-scheme packetfence
```

SNMP settings:

```
snmp-agent
snmp-agent community read public
snmp-agent community write private
snmp-agent sys-info version v2c
```

Global configuration:

```
port-security enable
mac-authentication domain packetfence
```

Global configuration (with VoIP):

Add the following to the previous global configuration.

```
undo voice vlan security enable
lldp compliance cdp
```

Interfaces configuration:

```
port link-type hybrid
port hybrid vlan 5 untagged
port hybrid pvid vlan 5
mac-vlan enable
stp edged-port enable
mac-authentication guest-vlan 5
port-security max-mac-count 1
```



```
port-security port-mode mac-authentication
port-security intrusion-mode blockmac
```

Interfaces configuration (with VoIP):

Add the following to the previous interfaces configuration.

```
port hybrid vlan 100 tagged
undo voice vlan mode auto
voice vlan 100 enable
lldp compliance admin-status cdp txrx
port-security max-mac-count 3
```

## 5.18. HP

### 5.18.1. HPE 1910 Serie

The HP 1910 Serie is based on the 3Com OS and most of the configuration will be done from the GUI.

VLAN creation: \* go to **Network, VLAN**, \* click on the *Create* tab \* create the VLANs

Configure PacketFence as a RADIUS server: \* go to **Authentication, RADIUS** \* click on the *RADIUS Server* tab \* from *Server Type*, select **Authentication Server** \* from *Primary Server*, give the **PacketFence IP address** \* click **Apply**

Then: \* click on the *RADIUS Setup* tab \* check the box *Authentication Server Shared Key* \* give the **shared key** \* from *Username Format*, select **without-domain** \* click **Apply**

Create a new authentication domain: \* go to **Authentication, AAA**, \* click on the *Domain Setup* tab,

#### WARNING

We will need to create a specific authentication domain and **not making it as the default domain**.

Configure the 802.1X and authentication method: \* go to **Authentication** \* click on the *802.1X* tab \* check the *Enable 802.1X* box \* from *Authentication Method*, select **EAP**

Configure the authentication domain:

INFO: Even limited, there is a command line access.

- connect to the switch using `ss`,
- type the command:

```
_cmdline-mode on
```

- password is: **512900**
- Type the commands:

#### System-view

```
Mac-authentication domain YOUR_DOMAIN_NAME
```

```
Mac-authentication user-name-format mac-address with-hyphen
```

- change the *YOUR\_DOMAIN\_NAME* with the one from your environment
- do not close your terminal, we will come back to this later
- from the GUI, go to **Authentication, 802.1X**
- from *Port*, select the port your are connected to. **GigabitEthernet X/X/X**
- from *Port Control*, select **MAC Based**
- from *Max Number of Users*, give **2**
- check the box *Enable Re-Authentication*
- click on **Apply**

Enable the MAC Authentication in SSH, as well:

- back on the SSH terminal
- type the following command:

```
Mac-authentication interface gX/X/X
```

- modify the interface name for your environment

The configuration is done.

## 5.18.2. E4800G and E5500G Switch series

These are re-branded 3Com switches, see under the [3Com section](#) for their documentation.

## 5.19. HP ProCurve

PacketFence supports ProCurve switches *without VoIP* using two different trap types:

- linkUp/linkDown
- Port Security (with static MACs)

**We recommend to enable Port Security only.**

Don't forget to update the startup config!

#### NOTE

HP ProCurve only sends one security trap to PacketFence per security violation so make sure PacketFence runs when you configure port-security. Also, because of the above limitation, it is considered good practice to reset the intrusion flag as a first troubleshooting step.

If you want to learn more about intrusion flag and port-security, please refer to the ProCurve documentation.

## CAUTION

If you configure a switch that is already in production be careful that enabling port-security causes active MAC addresses to be automatically added to the intrusion list without a security trap sent to PacketFence. This is undesired because PacketFence will not be notified that it needs to configure the port. As a work-around, unplug clients before activating port-security or remove the intrusion flag after you enabled port-security with: `port-security <port> clear-intrusion-flag`.

### 5.19.1. 2500 Series

linkUp/linkDown traps are enabled by default so we disable them and enable Port Security only.

On 2500's, we need to secure bogus MAC addresses on ports in order for the switch to send a trap when a new MAC appears on a port.

Global config settings:

```
snmp-server community "public" Unrestricted
snmp-server host 192.168.1.5 "public" Not-INFO
no snmp-server enable traps link-change 1-26
```

On each interface:

```
port-security xx learn-mode static action send-alarm mac-address 0200000000xx
```

where `xx` stands for the interface index

### CLI authentication

You can use PacketFence for RADIUS CLI authentication on the 2500 Series.

Global config settings

```
radius-server host 192.168.1.5 key useStrongerSecret
aaa authentication ssh login radius local
aaa authentication telnet login radius local
```

Next, make sure you configure the switch in PacketFence accordingly as well as the proper administrative access. Refer to the Administration Guide for more details.

### 5.19.2. 2600 Series and 3400cl Series

#### Port-Security

linkUp/linkDown traps are enabled by default so we disable them and enable Port Security only.

On 2600's, we **don't** need to secure bogus MAC addresses on ports in order for the switch to send a trap when a new MAC appears on a port.

Global config settings

```
snmp-server community public manager unrestricted
snmp-server host 192.168.1.5 "public" Not-INFO
no snmp-server enable traps link-change 1-26
```

On each interface:

```
port-security xx learn-mode configured action send-alarm
```

where **xx** stands for the interface index

### MAC Authentication (Firmware > 11.72)

In order to enable RADIUS mac authentication on the ports, you first need to join the ports to either the registration or the mac detection vlan (as a security measure).

Next, define the RADIUS server host:

```
radius-server host 192.168.1.5 key useStrongerSecret
```

Next, we create a server-group that points to the PacketFence server,

```
aaa server-group radius "packetfence" host 192.168.1.5
```

Configure the AAA authentication for MAC authentication to use the right server-group:

```
aaa authentication mac-based chap-radius server-group "packetfence"
```

Optionally, you can configure the SSH and telnet authentication to point to PacketFence (make sure you also follow instructions in the Administration Guide to activate the CLI access):

```
aaa authentication login privilege-mode
```

```
aaa authentication ssh login radius server-group packetfence local
aaa authentication telnet login radius server-group packetfence local
```

Finally, enable MAC authentication on all necessary ports:

```
aaa port-access mac-based 1-24
```

Don't forget to permit address moves and the reauth period. x represents the port index:

```
aaa port-access mac-based x addr-moves
aaa port-access mac-based x reauth-period 14400
```

(Thanks to Jean-Francois Laporte for this contribution)

### 5.19.3. 2610

#### 802.1X

Define the RADIUS server host:

```
radius-server host 192.168.1.5 key "useStrongerSecret"
radius-server host 192.168.1.5 acct-port 1813 key "useStrongerSecret"
```

Define the SNMP configuration:

```
snmp-server host 192.168.1.5 community "public" informs trap-level not-info
no snmp-server enable traps link-change C1
```

Configure the server-group:

```
aaa server-group radius "packetfence" host 192.168.1.5
```

Configure authentication:

```
aaa authentication port-access eap-radius server-group "packetfence"
aaa authentication mac-based chap-radius server-group "packetfence"
```

Configure the port-security:

```
port-security C1 learn-mode port-access action send-alarm
```

Configuration of the port:

```
aaa port-access authenticator C1
aaa port-access authenticator C1 client-limit 1
aaa port-access authenticator active
aaa port-access mac-based C1
aaa port-access mac-based C1 addr-moves
aaa port-access mac-based C1 reauth-period 14400
aaa port-access C1 controlled-direction in
```

(Thanks to Denis Bonnenfant for this contribution)

## 5.19.4. 4100, 5300, 5400 Series

### Port-Security

linkUp/linkDown traps are enabled by default and we have not found a way yet to disable them so do not forget to declare the trunk ports as uplinks in the switch config file.

On 4100's, we need to secure bogus MAC addresses on ports in order for the switch to send a trap when a new MAC appears on a port. The ports are indexed differently on 4100's: it's based on the number of modules you have in your 4100, each module is indexed with a letter.

Global config settings

```
snmp-server community "public" Unrestricted
snmp-server host 192.168.1.5 "public" Not-INFO
no snmp-server enable traps link-change 1-26
```

You should configure interfaces like this:

```
port-security A1 learn-mode static action send-alarm mac-address 020000000001
...
port-security A24 learn-mode static action send-alarm mac-address 020000000024
port-security B1 learn-mode static action send-alarm mac-address 020000000025
...
port-security B24 learn-mode static action send-alarm mac-address 020000000048
port-security C1 learn-mode static action send-alarm mac-address 020000000049
...
```

### MAC Authentication (with VoIP)

In order to have MAC Authentication working with VoIP, you need to ensure that the Voice VLAN is tagged on all the port first. You also need to activate lldp notification on all ports that will handle VoIP. **Finally, make sure to change the value of the \$VOICEVLANAME variable in the Procurve 5400 module's source code.**

RADIUS configuration radius-server host 192.168.1.5 key strongKey

MAC Authentication

```
aaa port-access mac-based C5-C7
aaa port-access mac-based C5 addr-limit 2
aaa port-access mac-based C6 addr-limit 2
aaa port-access mac-based C7 addr-limit 2
aaa port-access C5 controlled-direction in
aaa port-access C6 controlled-direction in
aaa port-access C7 controlled-direction in
```

## 802.1X (with VoIP)

Same as MAC Authentication, you need to ensure that the Voice VLAN is tagged on all the port first if using 802.1X. You also need to activate lldp notification on all ports that will handle VoIP. **Finally, make sure to change the value of the \$VOICEVLANAME variable in the Procurve 5400 module's source code.**

RADIUS configuration

```
radius-server host 192.168.1.5 key strongKey
```

802.1X

```
aaa authentication port-access eap-radius
aaa port-access authenticator C3-C4
aaa port-access authenticator C3 client-limit 3
aaa port-access authenticator C4 client-limit 3
aaa port-access authenticator active
```

## Downloadable ACLs

HP and Aruba switches running the ArubaOS-Switch operating system (previously called ProVision) support dynamic RADIUS-assigned ACLs. It requires RADIUS authentication using the 802.1X, Web authentication or MAC authentication available on the switch. You can define ACLs in PacketFence so that they can be automatically applied on the ports of the switches based on the role assigned. We have tested it successfully on the Aruba 2930M and 3810 series on version 16.05.0004.

To use this feature, first configure RADIUS and the authentication method on your switch. Next, in the PacketFence web admin interface, go to *Configuration* → *Policies and Access Control* → *Switches*. Click on the switch you want, then on the 'Roles' tab, and check 'Role by access list'. Now you are able to add ACLs for each role.

Configure RADIUS operation on the switch:

```
radius-server host <ipv4-address> key <key-string>
```

Configure RADIUS network accounting on the switch (optional).

```
aaa accounting network <start-stop|stop-only> radius
```

You can also view ACL counter hits using either of the following commands:

```
show access-list radius <port-list>
show port-access <authenticator|mac-based|web-based> <port-list> clients
detailed
```

Configure an authentication method. Options include 802.1X, web-based authentication, and MAC authentication. You can configure 802.1X, web-based authentication, and/or MAC authentication to operate simultaneously on the same ports.

- 802.1X Option:

```
aaa port-access authenticator <port-list>
aaa authentication port-access chap-radius
aaa port-access authenticator active
```

- MAC Authentication Option:

```
aaa port-access mac-based <port-list>
```

- Web Authentication Option:

```
aaa port-access web-based <port-list>
```

This command configures web-based authentication on the switch and activates this feature on the specified ports.

For example, if you want the users that are in the registration VLAN to only use HTTP, HTTPS, DNS and DHCP you can configure this ACL in the registration role.

### Role mapping by Access List

Role by Access List

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| registration | <pre>permit in tcp from any to any 80, 443 permit in udp from any to any 53,67-68 deny in ip from any to any</pre> |
| isolation    |  |
| macDetection |  |

Now, your normal users are placed in the 'default' role and your guests in the 'guest' role.



The 'default' role uses the network 192.168.5.0/24 and 'guest' uses the network 192.168.10.0/24.

You can prevent communications between both networks using these access lists

Role by Access List

registration

isolation

macDetection

inline

REJECT

default deny ip tcp from any to 192.168.10.0/24  
permit in ip any to any

gaming deny in tcp from any to 192.168.5.0/24  
permit in ip from any to any

guest

voice

You could also only prevent your guest users from using shared directories

Role by Access List

registration

isolation

macDetection

inline

REJECT

default

gaming

guest

```
deny in tcp from any to any 445  
deny in tcp from any to any 139  
permit in ip from any to any
```

voice

You could also restrict your users to use only your DNS server where 192.168.5.2 is your DNS server

Role by Access List

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| registration |  |
| isolation    |  |
| macDetection |  |
| inline       |  |
| REJECT       |  |
| default      | <pre>permit in udp from any to host 192.168.5.2 53 deny in udp from any to any 53 permit in ip from any to any</pre> |
| gaming       |  |
| guest        |  |
| voice        |  |

## 5.20. Huawei

PacketFence supports the S5710/S5720/S5735 switch from Huawei.

### 5.20.1. Global configuration

Global configuration for 802.1X, Mac authentication, accounting and CLI login:

```

undo authentication unified-mode

radius-server template packetfence
radius-server shared-key cipher <yourSecret>
radius-server authentication 192.168.1.5 1812
radius-server accounting 192.168.1.5 1813
radius-server retransmit 2

# used for RADIUS Disconnect messages
radius-server authorization 192.168.1.5 shared-key cipher <yourSecret>

# to accept RADIUS Disconnect messages with MAC in AA-BB-CC-DD-FF-EE format
radius-server authorization calling-station-id decode-mac-format ascii hyphen-
split common

aaa
authentication-scheme pf-auth
authentication-mode radius
accounting-scheme pf-acct
accounting-mode radius
# for CLI authentication
service-scheme pf-cli
domain pf
authentication-scheme pf-auth
accounting-scheme pf-acct
service-scheme pf-cli
radius-server packetfence

# set default common domain used for authentication
domain pf
# if you want CLI login
# domain pf admin

dot1x enable
mac-authen
dot1x timer reauthenticate-period 10800
mac-authen timer reauthenticate-period 10800
dot1x dhcp-trigger

snmp-agent
snmp-agent local-engineid 800007DB0304F9389D2360
snmp-agent community read cipher <privateKey>
snmp-agent community write cipher <privateKey>
snmp-agent sys-info version v2c v3

```

## 5.20.2. SNMPv3

```
snmp-agent group v3 MYGROUP privacy read-view SNMP write-view SNMP
snmp-agent usm-user v3 MYUSER
snmp-agent usm-user v3 MYUSER group MYGROUP
snmp-agent usm-user v3 MYUSER authentication-mode md5 cipher SECRET1
snmp-agent usm-user v3 MYUSER privacy-mode aes128 cipher SECRET2
```

## 5.20.3. MAC authentication

```
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/8
dot1x mac-bypass mac-auth-first
dot1x mac-bypass
dot1x max-user 1
dot1x reauthenticate
dot1x authentication-method eap
```

## 5.20.4. 802.1X with MAC Auth bypass

```
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/8
port link-type hybrid
dot1x mac-bypass
dot1x max-user 1
dot1x reauthenticate
dot1x authentication-method eap
```

## 5.20.5. Voice port

Configuration of a switchport where a phone is plugged:

```
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/2
port link-type hybrid
voice-vlan 100 enable
port hybrid tagged vlan 100
mac-authen
```

## 5.20.6. Troubleshooting commands

```
display aaa configuration
display dot1x
display access-user
display radius-server
```

```
test-aaa user password radius-template packetfence pap
```

## 5.21. IBM

### 5.21.1. RackSwitch G8052

PacketFence supports only 802.1X authentication. It has been tested on version 7.9.11.0.

#### RADIUS configuration

```
RS G8052(config)# radius-server primary-host 192.168.1.5
RS G8052(config)# radius-server enable
RS G8052(config)# radius-server primary-host 192.168.1.5 key useStrongerSecret
```

#### 802.1X (dot1x) configuration

```
RS G8052(config)# dot1x enable
```

#### SNMP configuration

```
RS G8052(config)# snmp-server read-community packetfence
RS G8052(config)# snmp-server write-community packetfence
```

#### Port configuration

```
RS G8052(config)# configure terminal
RS G8052(config)# interface port 1
RS G8052(config-if)# dot1x mode auto
RS G8052(config-if)# dot1x quiet-time 2
RS G8052(config-if)# dot1x server-timeout 3
RS G8052(config-if)# dot1x re-authenticate
RS G8052(config-if)# dot1x re-authentication-interval 10800
RS G8052(config-if)# dot1x vlan-assign
RS G8052(config-if)# end
```

#### PacketFence configuration

In order to configure the IBM RackSwitch G8052 switch module, go in the PacketFence administration interface under **Configuration→Switches→Add switch**

Definition:

```
IP: This will be the IP of the IBM StackSwitch G8052 switch on the management
```

```
network
Description: IBM StackSwitch G8052
Type: IBM RackSwitch G8052
Mode: Production
Deauthentication: SNMP
Dynamic Uplinks: Checked
```

Roles:

```
Role by VLAN ID: checked
registration VLAN: 2
isolation VLAN: 3
default: 10
```

Radius:

```
Secret Passphrase: useStrongerSecret
```

Snmp:

```
SNMP Version: 2c
SNMP Read Community: packetfence
SNMP Write Community: packetfence
```

Click Save to add the switch

## 5.22. Intel

### 5.22.1. Express 460 and Express 530

PacketFence support these switches *without VoIP* using one trap type:

- linkUp/linkDown

Exact command-line configuration to be contributed...

## 5.23. Juniper

PacketFence supports Juniper switches in MAC Authentication (Juniper's MAC RADIUS) mode and 802.1X. PacketFence supports VoIP on the EX2200 (JUNOS 12.6) and EX4200 (JUNOS 13.2)

```
# load replace terminal
[Type ^D at a new line to end input]
interfaces {
```



```

interface-range access-ports {
    member-range ge-0/0/1 to ge-0/0/46;
    unit 0 {
        family ethernet-switching {
            port-mode access;
        }
    }
}

protocols {
    dot1x {
        authenticator {
            authentication-profile-name packetfence;
            interface {
                access-ports {
                    supplicant multiple;
                    mac-radius;
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

access {
    radius-server {
        192.168.1.5 {
            port 1812;
            secret "useStrongerSecret";
        }
    }

    profile packetfence {
        authentication-order radius;
        radius {
            authentication-server 192.168.1.5;
            accounting-server 192.168.1.5;
        }
        accounting {
            order radius;
            accounting-stop-on-failure;
            accounting-stop-on-access-deny;
        }
    }
}

ethernet-switching-options {
    secure-access-port {

```

```

        interface access-ports {
            mac-limit 1 action drop;
        }
    }

snmp {
    name "EX 4200";
    description juniper;
    location EX;
    contact "email@example.com";
    client-list list0 {
        192.168.1.5/32;
    }
    community public {
        authorization read-only;
        client-list-name list0;
    }
    community private {
        authorization read-write;
        client-list-name list0;
    }
}

Ctrl-D
# commit comment "packetfenced"

```

Change the `interface-range` statement to reflect the ports you want to secure with PacketFence.

### 5.23.1. VoIP configuration

```

# load replace terminal
[Type ^D at a new line to end input]
protocols{
    lldp {
        advertisement-interval 5;
        transmit-delay 1;
        ptopo-configuration-trap-interval 1;
        lldp-configuration-notification-interval 1;
        interface all;
    }
    lldp-med {
        interface all;
    }
}

```

```

ethernet-switching-options {
    secure-access-port {
        interface access-ports {
            mac-limit 2 action drop;
        }
    }
    voip {
        interface access-ports {
            vlan voice;
            forwarding-class voice;
        }
    }
}

vlans {
    voice {
        vlan-id 3;
    }
}

Ctrl-D
# commit comment "packetfenced VoIP"

```

### 5.23.2. 802.1X configuration

```

protocols {
    dot1x {
        authenticator {
            authentication-profile-name packetfence;
            interface {
                access-ports {
                    supplicant multiple;
                    mac-radius;
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

Ctrl-D
# commit comment "packetfenced dot1x"

```

### 5.23.3. MAC Authentication configuration

```

protocols {

```

```

dot1x {
  authenticator {
    authentication-profile-name packetfence;
    interface {
      access-ports {
        supplicant multiple;
        mac-radius {
          restrict;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
Ctrl-D
# commit comment "packetfenced mac auth"

```

#### 5.23.4. Configuration for MAC authentication floating devices

To support floating devices on a Juniper switch you need to configure the 'flap-on-disconnect' option on each interface individually and remove it from the access-ports group.

```

# load replace terminal
[Type ^D at a new line to end input]
protocols {
  dot1x {
    authenticator {
      authentication-profile-name packetfence;
      interface {
        ge-0/0/1.0 {
          mac-radius{
            flap-on-disconnect;
          }
        }
        ge-0/0/2.0 {
          mac-radius{
            flap-on-disconnect;
          }
        }
        .....
      }
      access-ports {
        supplicant multiple;
        mac-radius {
          restrict;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}

```

```

    }
  }
}
Ctrl-D
# commit comment "configured for floating devices"

```

**NOTE** | `flap-on-disconnect` option takes effect only when the `restrict` option is also set.

### 5.23.5. Radius CLI login

```

set system authentication-order [ radius password ]

set system radius-server 192.168.1.5 secret useStrongerSecret

set system login user R0 class read-only

set system login user SU class super-user

```

## 5.24. LG-Ericsson

PacketFence supports iPECS series switches *without VoIP* using two different trap types:

- linkUp / linkDown
- Port Security (with static MACs)

On some recent models, we can also use more secure and robust features, like:

- MAC Authentication
- 802.1X

### 5.24.1. ES-4500G Series

#### LinkUp / LinkDown

Firmware 1.2.3.2 is required for linkUp / linkDown

Prior to config, make sure to create all necessaries VLANs and config the appropriate uplink port.

Global config settings

```

snmp-server community public ro
snmp-server community private rw
!
snmp-server enable traps authentication
snmp-server host 192.168.1.5 public version 2c udp-port 162

```

```
snmp-server notify-filter traphost.192.168.1.5.public remote 192.168.1.5
```

Firmware is kinda buggy so you'll need to enable linkUp / linkDown using the Web Interface under **Administration** → **SNMP**.

Some reports shows that the switch doesn't always send linkDown traps.

On each interface (except uplink)

```
switchport allowed vlan add 4 untagged
switchport native vlan 4
switchport allowed vlan remove 1
switchport mode access
```

## Port-Security

Firmware 1.2.3.2 is required for port-security.

Prior to config, make sure to create all necessaries VLANs and config the appropriate uplink port.

Global config settings

```
snmp-server community public ro
snmp-server community private rw
!
snmp-server enable traps authentication
snmp-server host 192.168.1.5 public version 2c udp-port 162
snmp-server notify-filter traphost.192.168.1.5.public remote 192.168.1.5
```

On each interface (except uplink)

```
port security max-mac-count 1
port security
port security action trap
switchport allowed vlan add 2 untagged
switchport native vlan 2
switchport allowed vlan remove 1
switchport mode access
```

The above *port security* command may not work using the CLI. In this case, use the Web Interface under the *Security* → *Port Security* menu and enable each ports using the checkboxes.

It is also recommended, when using port-security, to disable link-change (UP / DOWN) traps.

Don't forget to update the startup config!

## 5.25. Linksys

PacketFence supports Linksys switches *without VoIP* using one trap type:

- linkUp/linkDown

Don't forget to update the startup config!

### 5.25.1. SRW224G4

Global config settings

```
no snmp-server trap authentication
snmp-server community CS_2000_le rw view Default
snmp-server community CS_2000_ls ro view Default
snmp-server host 192.168.1.5 public 2
```

On each interface

```
switchport access vlan 4
```

## 5.26. Netgear

The "web-managed smart switch" models GS108Tv2/GS110/GS110TP are supported with Link up/down traps only.

Higher-end "fully managed" switches including FSM726v1 are supported in Port Security mode.

### 5.26.1. FSM726 / FSM726S version 1

PacketFence supports FSM726 / FSM726S version 1 switches *without VoIP* in Port Security mode (with static MACs) – called Trusted MAC table on Netgear's hardware.

Using the HTTP GUI, follow the steps below to configure such feature. Of course, you must create all your VLANs on the switch as well.

#### SNMP Settings

In *Advanced* → *SNMP* → *Community Table*, create a read-write community string and a trap community string. You can use the same community for all the 3 functions (Get, Set, Trap).

Next, under *Advanced* → *SNMP* → *Host Table*, enable the Host Authorization feature and add the PacketFence server into the allowed host list.

Finally, under *Advanced* → *SNMP* → *Trap Setting*, enable the authentication trap.

#### Trusted MAC Security

Under *Advanced* → *Advanced Security* → *Trusted MAC Address*, create a fake MAC address per port (ie. 02:00:00:00:00:xx where **xx** is the port number). This will have the effect of sending a

security trap to PacketFence when a new device plugs on the port.

Don't forget to save the configuration!

## 5.26.2. GS108Tv2 / GS110T / GS110TP

PacketFence supports certain lower-end Netgear switches in Link Up/Link Down traps. These "web-managed" switches have no command-line interface and only a subset of the port security and 802.1X functionality needed to interoperate with PacketFence in these more advanced modes. There is no way to send a trap upon port security violation, and there is only pure 802.1X, no MAC Address Bypass.

### Switch Configuration

It can be difficult to find the advanced features in the web GUI. We recommend using the GUI "Maintenance" tab to Upload the configuration to a file, and then edit it there.

Hints on file upload/download:

From the File Type menu, choose Text Configuration.

If you're uploading to the TFTP root directory, leave Path blank.

At the top of the config file, you need:

```
vlan database
vlan 1,2,3,4,5
vlan name 1 "Normal"
vlan name 2 "Registration"
vlan name 3 "Isolation"
vlan name 4 "MAC Detection"
vlan name 5 "Guest"
exit
```

In the same section as "users passwd", you need to specify your PacketFence server's management address:

```
snmptrap useStrongerSecret ipaddr 192.168.1.5
```

In the same section as the "voip oui" lines, you need to allow your SNMP server:

```
snmp-server community "public"
snmp-server community rw useStrongerSecret
snmp-server community ipaddr 192.168.1.5 public
snmp-server community ipmask 255.255.255.0 public
snmp-server community ipaddr 192.168.1.5 useStrongerSecret
snmp-server community ipmask 255.255.255.0 useStrongerSecret
no voip vlan
```



You should use port 1 as the uplink. If you connect port 1 of a GS108Tv2 switch into a Power over Ethernet switch, then the GS108Tv2 does not need AC power. If you bought GS110T(P) switches, presumably it's for the SFP uplink option. You'll want to configure both port 1 and the SFP ports 9-10 as trunks:

```
interface 0/1
no snmp trap link-status
ip dhcp filtering trust
vlan pvid 1
vlan ingressfilter
vlan participation include 1,2,3,4,5
vlan tagging 2,3,4,5
no auto-voip
exit
```

Each user-facing, PacketFence-managed port should be configured like:

```
interface 0/2
vlan pvid 4
vlan ingressfilter
vlan participation include 4
no auto-voip
exit
```

### 5.26.3. M Series

PacketFence supports the Netgear M series in wired MAC authentication without VoIP.

#### Switch configuration

---

```
radius server host auth 192.168.1.5 radius server key auth 192.168.1.5 (then press enter and
input your secret) radius server primary 192.168.1.5 radius server host acct 192.168.1.5 radius
server key acct 192.168.1.5 (then press enter and input your secret)
```

```
aaa session-id unique dot1x system-auth-control aaa authentication dot1x default radius
authorization network radius radius accounting mode
```

---

#### On your uplinks

---

```
dot1x port-control force-authorized
```

---

## On your interfaces

```
interface 0/x dot1x port-control mac-based dot1x timeout guest-vlan-period 1 dot1x mac-auth-bypass exit
```

## 5.27. Nortel

PacketFence supports Nortel switches with VoIP using one trap type:

- Mac Security

Don't forget to update the startup config!

### NOTE

if you are using a 5500 series with a firmware version of 6 or above, you must use a different module called `Nortel::BayStack5500_6x` in your `/usr/local/pf/conf/switches.conf`. Indeed, Nortel introduced an incompatible change of behavior in this firmware.

### 5.27.1. BayStack 470, ERS2500 Series, ERS4500 Series, 4550, 5500 Series and ES325

#### Global config settings

```
snmp-server authentication-trap disable
snmp-server host 192.168.1.5 "public"
snmp trap link-status port 1-24 disable
no mac-security mac-address-table
interface FastEthernet ALL
mac-security port ALL disable
mac-security port 1-24 enable
default mac-security auto-learning port ALL max-addr
exit
mac-security enable
mac-security snmp-lock disable
mac-security intrusion-detect disable
mac-security filtering enable
mac-security snmp-trap enable
mac-security auto-learning aging-time 60
mac-security learning-ports NONE
mac-security learning disable
```

#### VoIP support

You need to ensure that all your ports are tagged with the voice VLAN. The switch should do the rest for you.

```
vlan create 6 name "Telephone" type port learning ivl
vlan members 6 1-20,23-24
```

## 5.27.2. BPS2000

You can only configure this switch through menus.

Enable MAC Address Security:

```
MAC Address Security: Enabled
MAC Address Security SNMP-Locked: Disabled
Partition Port on Intrusion Detected: Disabled
DA Filtering on Intrusion Detected: Enabled
Generate SNMP Trap on Intrusion: Enabled
Current Learning Mode: Disabled
Learn by Ports: NONE
```

| Port | Trunk | Security |
|------|-------|----------|
| ---- | ----- | -----    |
| 1    |       | Enabled  |
| ...  |       |          |
| 24   |       | Enabled  |

## 5.28. Pica8

PacketFence supports Pica8 switches without VoIP using CoA to:

- bounce-host-port
- reauthenticate-host

Notes

- **SNMP is not supported yet**
- **Port Security is not supported**

For interfaces with MAC Authentication, perform the following:

```
set interface gigabit-ethernet ge-1/1/25 family ethernet-switching port-mode
trunk
set protocols dot1x interface ge-1/1/25 auth-mode mac-radius
set protocols dot1x interface ge-1/1/25 dynamic-vlan-enable true
set protocols dot1x traceoptions interface ge-1/1/25 flag all disable false
```

For interfaces with 802.1X, perform:

```
set interface gigabit-ethernet ge-1/1/4 family ethernet-switching port-mode trunk
set protocols dot1x interface ge-1/1/4 auth-mode dot1x
set protocols dot1x interface ge-1/1/4 dynamic-vlan-enable true
set protocols dot1x traceoptions interface ge-1/1/4 flag all disable false
```

Global configuration:

```
set protocols dot1x aaa radius nas-ip 10.10.51.169
set protocols dot1x aaa radius authentication server-ip 192.168.1.5 shared-key useStrongerSecret
set protocols dot1x aaa radius dynamic-author client 192.168.1.5 shared-key useStrongerSecret
set protocols dot1x traceoptions interface ge-1/1/4 flag all disable false
set protocols dot1x traceoptions flag radius disable false
set vlans vlan-id 10
set vlans vlan-id 20
set vlans vlan-id 30
commit
```

- **10.10.51.169** is the switch IP
- For interfaces where auth-mode is unknown, use the following command `set protocols dot1x interface ge-1/1/12 auth-mode dot1x-mac-radius` This allows the switch to first try 802.1X and if there is no response from the client then fallback to MAC Authentication.
- Create VLAN(s) on the switch as per your requirements
- Please note that traceoptions are only for debugging

## 5.29. SMC

### 5.29.1. TigerStack 6128L2, 8824M and 8848M

PacketFence supports these switches without VoIP using two different trap types:

- linkUp/linkDown
- Port Security (with static MACs)

**We recommend to enable Port Security only.**

Global config settings

```
SNMP-server host 192.168.1.5 public version 2c udp-port 162
no snmp-server enable traps link-up-down
```

On each interface:

```
port security max-mac-count 1
port security
port security action trap
```

## 5.29.2. TigerStack 6224M

Supports linkUp/linkDown mode

Global config settings

```
SNMP-server host 192.168.1.5 public version 1
```

## 5.30. Ubiquiti

### 5.30.1. EdgeSwitch

PacketFence supports the EdgeSwitch with the following techniques:

- 802.1X with MAC Authentication fallback
- 802.1X with MAC Authentication fallback with VoIP

#### 802.1X with MAC Authentication fallback

We assume that the switch ip is 192.168.1.254

First on the uplink add this configuration:

```
dot1x port-control force-authorized
vlan participation include 1,2,3,4,5,100
vlan tagging 2,3,4,5,100
```

Global config settings:

```
vlan database
vlan 1
vlan 2
vlan 3
vlan 4
vlan 5
vlan 100
exit
```

```
configure
dot1x system-auth-control
```

```
aaa authentication dot1x default radius
authorization network radius
dot1x dynamic-vlan enable
radius accounting mode
radius server host auth "192.168.1.5" name "PacketFence"
radius server key auth "192.168.1.5"
```

```
Enter secret (64 characters max):useStrongerSecret
```

```
radius server primary "192.168.1.5"
no radius server msgauth "192.168.1.5"
radius server attribute 4 192.168.1.254
```

```
radius server attribute 32 "EdgeSwitch"
radius server host acct "192.168.1.5" name PacketFence-ACCT
radius server key acct "192.168.1.5"
```

```
Enter secret (64 characters max):useStrongerSecret
```

```
snmp-server community public ro
snmp-server community private rw
exit
```

On each interface (not uplink)

```
dot1x port-control mac-based
dot1x re-authentication
dot1x timeout reauth-period 1800
dot1x timeout supp-timeout 10
dot1x timeout guest-vlan-period 3
dot1x timeout server-timeout 1800
dot1x mac-auth-bypass
dot1x unauthenticated-vlan 4
vlan participation include 1,2,3,4,5,100
exit
```

## 802.1X with MAC Authentication fallback with VoIP

We assume that the switch ip is 192.168.1.254

First on the uplink add this configuration:

```
dot1x port-control force-authorized
vlan participation include 1,2,3,4,5,100
vlan tagging 2,3,4,5,100
```

Global config settings:

```
vlan database
vlan 1
vlan 2
vlan 3
vlan 4
vlan 5
vlan 100
exit
```

```
configure
dot1x system-auth-control
aaa authentication dot1x default radius
authorization network radius
dot1x dynamic-vlan enable
voice vlan 100
radius accounting mode
radius server host auth "192.168.1.5" name "PacketFence"
radius server key auth "192.168.1.5"
```

```
Enter secret (64 characters max):useStrongerSecret
```

```
radius server primary "192.168.1.5"
no radius server msgauth "192.168.1.5"
radius server attribute 4 192.168.1.254
```

```
radius server attribute 32 "EdgeSwitch"
radius server host acct "192.168.1.5" name PacketFence-ACCT
radius server key acct "192.168.1.5"
```

```
Enter secret (64 characters max):useStrongerSecret
```

```
snmp-server community public ro
snmp-server community private rw
```

```
exit
```

On each interface (not uplink)

```
dot1x port-control mac-based
dot1x re-authentication
dot1x timeout reauth-period 1800
dot1x timeout supp-timeout 10
dot1x timeout guest-vlan-period 3
dot1x timeout server-timeout 1800
dot1x mac-auth-bypass
dot1x unauthenticated-vlan 4
vlan participation include 1,2,3,4,5,100
voice vlan 100
auto-voip protocol-based
lldp transmit
lldp receive
lldp transmit-tlv port-desc
lldp transmit-tlv sys-name
lldp transmit-tlv sys-desc
lldp transmit-tlv sys-cap
lldp transmit-mgmt
lldp notification
lldp med
lldp med confignotification
exit
```



# 6. Wireless Controllers and Access Point Configuration

## 6.1. Assumptions

Throughout this configuration example we use the following assumptions for our network infrastructure:

- PacketFence is fully configured with FreeRADIUS running
- PacketFence IP address: 192.168.1.5
- Normal VLAN: 1
- Registration VLAN: 2
- Isolation VLAN: 3
- MAC Detection VLAN: 4
- Guest VLAN: 5
- VoIP, Voice VLAN: 100
- use SNMP v2c
- SNMP community name: public
- RADIUS Secret: useStrongerSecret <sup>[1]</sup>
- Open SSID: PacketFence-Public
- WPA-Enterprise SSID: PacketFence-Secure

## 6.2. Unsupported Equipment

Wireless network access configuration is a lot more consistent between vendors. This is due to the fact that the situation is a lot more standardized than the wired side: VLAN assignment is done centrally with RADIUS and that the client protocol is consistent (MAC-Authentication or 802.1X).

This consistency has the benefit that a lot of the wireless network devices tend to work out-of-the-box with PacketFence. The only missing piece being, in most cases, remote deauthentication of the client which is used for VLAN assignment (deauth user so it'll reconnect and get new VLAN).

So, even if your wireless equipment is not explicitly supported by PacketFence, it's recommended that you give it a try. The next section covers the objectives that you want to accomplish for trying out your equipment even if we don't have configuration for it.

Here are the high-level requirements for proper wireless integration with PacketFence

- The appropriate VLANs must exist

- Allow controller to honor VLAN assignments from AAA (sometimes called AAA override)
- Put your open SSID (if any) in MAC-Authentication mode and authenticate against the FreeRADIUS hosted on PacketFence
- Put your secure SSID (if any) in 802.1X mode and authenticate against FreeRADIUS hosted on PacketFence.
- On registration / isolation VLANs the DHCP traffic must reach the PacketFence server
- On your production VLANs a copy of the DHCP traffic must reach PacketFence where a `pdhcpylistener` listens (configurable in `pf.conf` under `interfaces`)

At this point, user registration with the captive-portal is possible and registered users should have access to the appropriate VLANs. However, VLAN changes (like after a registration) won't automatically happen, you will need to disconnect / reconnect. An explanation is provided in introduction section above about this behavior.

You can try modules similar to your equipment if any (read appropriate instructions) or you can try to see if RFC3576 is supported. RFC3576 covers RADIUS Packet of Disconnect (PoD) also known as Disconnect Messages (DM) or Change of Authorization (CoA). You can try the Aruba module if you want to verify if RFC3576 is supported by your hardware.

If none of the above worked then you can fallback to inline enforcement or let us know what equipment you are using on the [packetfence-devel mailing list](#).

## 6.3. Aerohive Networks

Aerohive products are a bit different compared to the other vendors. They support either a local HiveManager (similar to a wireless controller) or a cloud-based HiveManager. However, the configuration is the same for the local and the cloud-based controller. Note that all the configurations are made on the HiveManager and then pushed to the APs.

### 6.3.1. MAC Authentication and 802.1X Configuration

#### Assumptions

- the network architecture is in order to give access to the Aerohive Access Point, and has access to Internet
- the VLANs are defined for registration, isolation and management networks
- from this documentation, we will assume that the VLANs tags are define like following:
  - PacketFence Management VLAN: 1 IP address: 192.168.1.5
  - registration VLAN ID 2, subnet 192.168.2.0/24
  - isolation VLAN ID 3, subnet 192.168.3.0/24
  - production VLAN ID 10, subnet 172.16.1.0/24
- the VLANs are spanned in the switches and switching L2 equipments, from the *Production Network* to the PacketFence server(s)
- the VLANs are allowed in the trunks
- Aerohive Access Point is loaded with HiveOS with version 6 or later
- HiveManager with version 6 or later
- Wireless AP: 172.16.1.1

- RADIUS Secret: useStrongerSecret

## Configure the Aerohive APs and SSID

Logon to your HiveManager interface:

- for this example, we assume that we are on the *Cloud* [MyHive.aerohive.com](https://MyHive.aerohive.com) solution
- from *HiveManager*, click on your **HiveManagerOnline Instances** VHM-XXXXXX
- from *Network Configuration / 1-Choose Network Policy*, click on **New**
- give a name to your Policy, and click **Create**
- from *2-Configure Interfaces and User Access, SSID*, click on **Choose** and click on **New**
- give a SSID Profile Name, SSID Name

For an open (no encryption) SSID using MAC-based authentication:

- click on **New**
  - SSID Access Security: **Open**
  - check the box *Enable MAC authentication*
- click on **Save**

Network Configuration

1 - Configure Network Policy - Pf\_NetPolicy

2 - Configure Interfaces and User Access

Edit SSID Cancel Save

Profile Name\*  (1-32 characters)

SSID\*  (1-32 characters)

Note: The SSID field can contain UTF-8 characters on devices running HiveOS 7.1r2 and later.

SSID Broadcast Band

Description  (0-64 characters)

**SSID Access Security**

WPA/WPA2 PSK (Personal)
  Private PSK
  WPA/WPA2 802.1X (Enterprise)
  WEP
  Open

Secure Not Secure

Neither data encryption nor user authentication is performed.

Use Aerohive ID Manager [Request a trial](#) ?

Enable Captive Web Portal  
 Enable MAC authentication

Authentication Protocol

**Optional Settings**

[>> Radio and Rates](#)

[>> DoS Prevention and Filters](#)

[>> Advanced](#)

3 - Configure and Update Devices

For a secure SSID using 802.1X:

- click on **New**
  - SSID Access Security: **WPA/WPA2 802.1X (Enterprise)**
  - Key Management; **WPA2-(WPA2 enterprise)-802.1X**
  - Encryption method: **CCMP (AES)**

Network Configuration

1 - Configure Network Policy - Pf\_NetPolicy

2 - Configure Interfaces and User Access

Edit SSID Cancel Save

Profile Name\*  (1-32 characters)

SSID\*  (1-32 characters)

Note: The SSID field can contain UTF-8 characters on devices running HiveOS 7.1r2 and later.

SSID Broadcast Band

Description  (0-64 characters)

**SSID Access Security**

WPA/WPA2 PSK (Personal)  
  Private PSK  
  WPA/WPA2 802.1X (Enterprise)  
  WEP  
  Open

Secure Not Secure

Each user is authenticated by checking submitted credentials against a RADIUS authentication server. Encryption keys are then generated and distributed to clients and access points.

Use Aerohive ID Manager [Request a trial](#) ?

Key Management

Encryption Method

>> Advanced Access Security Settings

Enable a captive web portal with use policy acceptance  
 Enable MAC authentication

- click on **Save**
- from SSID, be sure to have selected both SSIDs previously created, and click **OK**

Add the RADIUS parameters created before:

- under *Authentication* click on **<RADIUS Setting>**, and click on **New**
- from *RADIUS Name*, give the name of the PaketFence server, for example

**AAA RADIUS Client -> New** Cancel Save

RADIUS Name\*  (1-32 characters)

Description  (0-64 characters)

**RADIUS Servers**

Note: A RADIUS proxy server supports one or two RADIUS servers with Auth/Acct as the server type and a defined shared secret.  
 When authenticating with an Aerohive RADIUS server in the same hive, a shared secret is automatically generated.  
 When connected to an Aerohive router, devices obtain an Aerohive RADIUS server address through DHCP options by default. You can override this by specifying a different RADIUS server in the device settings.

Obtain an Aerohive RADIUS server address through DHCP options

Apply Remove Cancel

**Add a New RADIUS Server**

IP Address/Domain Name\*

- from *Add a New RADIUS Server*, in *IP Adresse/Domain Name*, put the PacketFence Server IP
- have the *Shared Secret (useStrongerSecret)* and *Confirm* it
- and Click on **Apply**

AAA Client Settings > Edit 'PacketFenceServer'

Save Cancel

RADIUS Name\*  (1-32 characters)

Description  (0-64 characters)

**RADIUS Servers**

Note: A RADIUS proxy server supports one or two RADIUS servers with Auth/Acct as the server type and a defined shared secret.  
 When authenticating with an Aerohive RADIUS server in the same hive, a shared secret is automatically generated.  
 When connected to an Aerohive router, devices obtain an Aerohive RADIUS server address through DHCP options by default. You can override this by specifying a different RADIUS server in the device settings.

Obtain an Aerohive RADIUS server address through DHCP options

Apply Remove Cancel

**Add a New RADIUS Server**

IP Address/Domain Name\*  +

Server Type\*

Shared Secret  (0-64 characters)

Confirm Secret  (0-64 characters)

Obscure Secret

Server Role\*

[Advanced Settings](#)

| <input type="checkbox"/> | IP Address/Domain Name | Server Type | Shared Secret | Server Role | Authentication Port | Accounting Port |
|--------------------------|------------------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|---------------------|-----------------|
|--------------------------|------------------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|---------------------|-----------------|

- deploy the *Optionnal Setting(not supported by RADIUS Proxy)* section and check the *Permit Dynamic Change of Authorization Message (RFC 3576)*

- click on **Save**
- next to your *SSID Name* Click on the **<RADIUS Setting>**, Click **OK**

We will create the default VLAN to be assign by the AP, when a new endpoint get in the SSID:

- Under *User Profile*, Click on **Add/Remove**, and Click on **New**, in the *Default* section
  - You will need to create one *User Profile* for each VLANs used, for us, we will create 3 Users Profiles, Registration, Isolation and Production
- from *name*, give the name of a rule to manage the VLANs with PacketFence (Registration ; Isolation ; Production)
- from *Attribute Name*, give the VLAN ID of the VLAN
- from *Default Vlan*, Click on the **(+)** (New)
- as a VLAN ID, give the VLAN ID earlier Registration(2) , Isolation(3) or Production(10)
- click on **Save** and click on **Save** again on the *Configure interfaces and User Access*

Network Configuration

1 - Configure Network Policy - Pf\_NetPolicy

2 - Configure Interfaces and User Access

**New User Profile** Cancel Save

Name\*  (1-32 characters)

Attribute Number\*  (1-4095)

Default VLAN\*  +

Description  (0-64 characters)

Allow user profiles to be managed with User Manager.

**Optional Settings**

- >> GRE Tunnels
- >> Firewalls
- >> QoS Settings
- >> User Profile Availability Schedules
- >> SLA Settings
- >> Client Classification Policy
- >> Advanced

3 - Configure and Update Devices

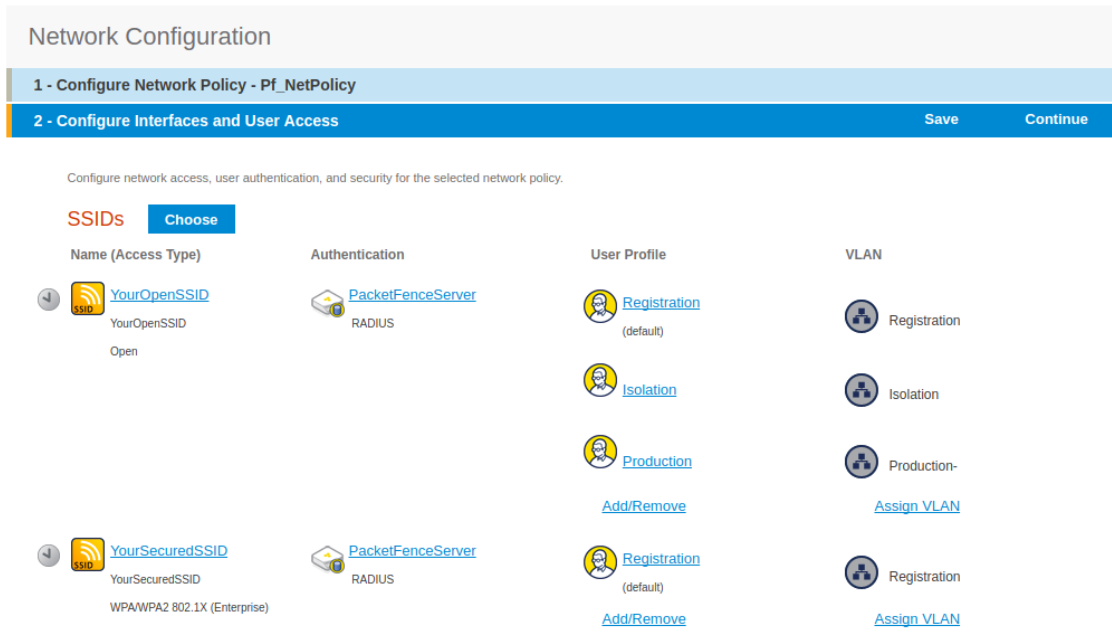
Create and add the other VLANs:

- Follow the same procedure to create the others VLANs

Once done with the VLANs configuration:

- From the *Choose User Profiles*, select the *Default* tab and click on your *Registration* VLAN tag
- From the *Authentication* tab, select the *Isolation* and the *Production* VLANs tag
- Click on **Save**

For our example, here is what it looks like, with two SSIDs



Then, click on *Continue*, on top right of the page.

Push your configuration to your AP:

- from *Configure and Update Devices*, check your AP in *Device to Update*
- click on *Update*
- select *Update Devices*
- from *HiveOS Number of devices running earlier versions of HiveOS*, select **Upgrade these devices to the latest version of HiveOS**
- click on *Update*
- wait until the date and time appears under *Update Status*

#### NOTE

Aerohive have a session replication feature to ease the EAP session roaming between two access points. However, this may cause problems when you bounce the wireless card of a client, it will not do a new RADIUS request. Two settings can be tweaked to reduce the caching impact, it is the roaming cache update interval and roaming cache ageout. They are located in **Configuration → SSIDs → [SSID Name] → Optional Settings → Advanced**. The other way to support Roaming is to enable SNMP trap in the Aerohive configuration to PacketFence server. PacketFence will recognize the ahConnectionChangeEvent and will change the location of the node in his base.

### Configure PacketFence

We will now need to create a new switch in PacketFence to be able to manage the endpoints behind the Aerohive APs.

Logon to your PacketFence interface:

- from *Configuration / Policies and Access Control / Switches /*
- on the line where there is the *default*, on the right, Click on *CLONE*

The screenshot displays the 'Network Devices' configuration page. The left sidebar is expanded to 'Switches'. The main area shows a table of network devices. The table has the following data:

| Identifier     | Description             | Group   | Type                   | Mode       | Actions      |
|----------------|-------------------------|---------|------------------------|------------|--------------|
| 192.168.0.1    | Test Switch             | default | Cisco::Catalyst_2960   | production | Delete Clone |
| 192.168.1.0/24 | Test Range Switch       | default | Cisco::Catalyst_2900XL | production | Delete Clone |
| Default        | Switches Default Values | default | Generic                | testing    | Delete Clone |

In Definition:

- *IP Address/MAC Address/Range (CIDR)*, give the network address of your *Production* network; For us, it will be **172.16.1.1**
- *Description*, give a description so you can quickly see what it is about



- from the *Type* list, select **Aerohive AP**
- from *Mode* select **Production**
- *Switch Group* by default set to **None**
- *Deauthentication Method* set to **RADIUS**
- click **SAVE**

The screenshot displays the 'New default Switch' configuration page in a network management dashboard. The dashboard header includes navigation links for Status, Reports, Auditing, Nodes, Users, and Configuration, along with user information (admin) and system status (API dashboard). The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with categories like Policies and Access Control, Compliance, Integration, and Network Configuration. The main configuration area is titled 'New default Switch' and features several tabs: Definition, Roles, Inline, RADIUS, SNMP, CLI, and Web Services. The 'Definition' tab is selected, showing the following configuration details:

- IP Address/MAC Address/Range (CIDR):** 172.16.26.36
- Description:** AeroHive Controller
- Type:** AeroHIVE AP
- Mode:** production
- Deauthentication Method:** RADIUS
- Use CoA:**  (Use CoA when available to deauthenticate the user. When disabled, RADIUS Disconnect will be used instead if it is available.)
- CLI Access Enabled:**  (Allow this switch to use PacketFence as a RADIUS server for CLI access.)
- External Portal Enforcement:**  (Enable external portal enforcement when supported by network equipment.)
- VOIP:**
- VoIPDHCPDetect:**  (Detect VoIP with the DHCP Fingerprint.)
- Dynamic Uplinks:**  (Dynamically lookup uplinks.)
- Controller IP Address:** (Use instead this IP address for de-authentication requests. Normally used for Wi-Fi only.)
- Disconnect Port:** (For Disconnect request, if we have to send to another port.)
- CoA Port:** (For CoA request, if we have to send to another port.)

At the bottom of the configuration panel, there are two buttons: 'Create' and 'Reset'.

From Role:

- set all VLAN ID for each roles

The screenshot shows the 'New default Switch' configuration window in PacketFence. The 'Roles' tab is selected, displaying a table for 'Role mapping by VLAN ID'. The table lists the following roles and VLAN IDs:

| Role         | VLAN ID |
|--------------|---------|
| registration | 2       |
| isolation    | 3       |
| macDetection | 4       |
| inline       | 6       |
| REJECT       | -1      |
| Staff        |         |
| default      | 10      |
| gaming       |         |
| guest        |         |
| voice        | 5       |

Below the table, there are three toggle switches:

- Role by VLAN ID:** Turned ON (checked).
- Role by Switch Role:** Turned OFF.
- Role by Web Auth URL:** Turned OFF.

At the bottom of the dialog, there are 'Create' and 'Reset' buttons.

From *RADIUS*:

- modify the secret passphrase previously sets in the Aerohive HiveManager
- click on **SAVE**

This ends the PacketFence configuration.

## 6.3.2. Web Auth (External Captive Portal) Configuration

In this section we will describe the WebAuth configuration using PacketFence as an external captive portal.

### Assumptions

In this part, it is recommended that the default VLAN must be the native VLAN. This way, the AP and the others network equipments will be able to manage VLANs.

You already have a Network Policy and at least one Access Point configured.

### Configure the external captive portal

Create a new Captive Portal Profile:

- from the HiveManager, go to **CONFIGURATION** → **ADVANCED CONFIGURATION** → **AUTHENTICATION** → **Captive Web Portals**
- click on **New**
- give it a name
- *Registration Type* must be **External Authentication**
- click on *Captive Web Portal Login Page Settings* to deploy the configuration window
- *Login URL* must be <http://192.168.1.5/AeroHIVE::AP>
- *Password Encryption* : **No Encryption (Plaintext Password)**
- click on **Save**

## Captive Web Portals > Edit 'PacketFencePortal'

Save

Cancel

Export

Name\*  (1-32 characters)

Note: If you modify the registration type, make sure the types of user profiles in all network policies referencing this Captive Web Portal are correct.

Registration Type

Description  (0-64 characters)

### ☑ Captive Web Portal Login Page Settings

Authentication Method

Login URL must begin with 'http://' or 'https://'

Login URL\*  (1-256 characters)

Password Encryption

### » Captive Web Portal Success Page Settings

### » Captive Web Portal Failure Page Settings

### » Captive Web Portal Language Support

### » Optional Advanced Configuration

Create a SSID to enable Captive Portal functionality:

- from the HiveManager, go to **CONFIGURATION** → **SSIDS**
- click on the New button
- give your Profile and SSID a name
- from *SSID Access Security* , Check **Enable Captive Web Portal**
- before clicking on the button **Save** you should have something like this:

SSIDs > Edit 'YourOpenSSID'

**Save** **Cancel**

Profile Name\*  (1-32 characters)

SSID\*  (1-32 characters)

Note: The SSID field can contain UTF-8 characters on devices running HiveOS 7.1r2 and later.

SSID Broadcast Band

Description  (0-64 characters)

**SSID Access Security**

WPA/WPA2 PSK (Personal)  
  Private PSK  
  WPA/WPA2 802.1X (Enterprise)  
  WEP  
  Open

Secure ————— Not Secure

Neither data encryption nor user authentication is performed.

Use Aerohive ID Manager [Request a trial](#) ?

Enable Captive Web Portal  
 Enable MAC authentication

- Configure and broadcast your SSID:
- from the HiveManager, go to **CONFIGURATION → NETWORK POLICIES**
  - choose Network Policy and click OK, you should see this:

Network Configuration

**1 - Configure Network Policy - Inverse-Lab**

**2 - Configure Interfaces and User Access** **Save** **Continue**

Configure network access, user authentication, and security for the selected network policy.

SSIDs **Choose**

| Name (Access Type)   | Authentication  | User Profile               | VLAN |
|--|---|----------------------------|------|
| <input type="radio"/> YourOpenSSID<br><small>YourOpenSSID</small><br><small>Open</small> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> <Captive Web Portal> | <a href="#">Add/Remove</a> |      |

Management and Native VLAN Settings **Edit**

MGT Interface VLAN 1      Native (Untagged) VLAN 1

Bonjour Gateway **Choose**

Layer 2 IPsec VPN **Choose**

Click **choose** to add a VPN to your network.

Additional Settings **Edit**

Device Templates **Choose**

Port Types

Note: Device Templates and Port Types settings are only required when applying this network policy to a BR100 in AP mode.

- under Authentication click on <Captive Web Portal> and select the captive portal previously configured
- once the <RADIUS Settings> appears under the captive portal, click on it
- on that new window Choose RADIUS click New
- give it a description and a name
- under RADIUS Servers click New

**AAA RADIUS Client -> New** Cancel Save

**RADIUS Servers**

Note: A RADIUS proxy server supports one or two RADIUS servers with Auth/Acct as the server type and a defined shared secret.  
 When authenticating with an Aerohive RADIUS server in the same hive, a shared secret is automatically generated.  
 When connected to an Aerohive router, devices obtain an Aerohive RADIUS server address through DHCP options by default. You can override this by specifying a different RADIUS server in the device settings.

Obtain an Aerohive RADIUS server address through DHCP options

Apply Remove Cancel

**Add a New RADIUS Server**

IP Address/Domain Name\* 192.168.1.5 + [copy]

Server Type\* Auth/Acct

Shared Secret ..... (0-64 characters)

Confirm Secret ..... (0-64 characters)

Obscure Secret

Server Role\* Primary

- click on Apply
- click on *Optional Settings (not supported by RADIUS Proxy)* and check **Permit Dynamic Change of Authorization Messages (RFC 3576)**

**AAA RADIUS Client -> New** Cancel Save

Confirm Secret ..... (0-64 characters)

Obscure Secret

Server Role\* Primary

[Advanced Settings](#)

| <input type="checkbox"/> | IP Address/Domain Name | Server Type | Shared Secret | Server Role | Authentication Port | Accounting Port |
|--------------------------|------------------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|---------------------|-----------------|
|                          |                        |             |               |             |                     |                 |

**Optional Settings (not supported by RADIUS Proxy)**

Retry Interval\* 600 (60-100000000 seconds)

Accounting Interim Update Interval\* 600 (10-100000000 seconds)

Permit Dynamic Change of Authorization Messages (RFC 3576)

Inject Operator-Name Attribute

Message Authenticator Attribute

- click on the Save button

Configure the User profile:

## Network Configuration

1 - Configure Network Policy - Inverse-Lab
Save    Continue

2 - Configure Interfaces and User Access

Configure network access, user authentication, and security for the selected network policy.

**SSIDs** Choose

**Name (Access Type)**

**YourOpenSSID**  
YourOpenSSID  
Open

**Authentication**

**PacketFencePortal**  
CWP: External Authentication

**PacketFence**  
RADIUS

**User Profile**

Add/Remove

**VLAN**

**Management and Native VLAN Settings** Edit

MGT Interface VLAN    1                      Native (Untagged) VLAN    1

**Bonjour Gateway** Choose

**Layer 2 IPsec VPN** Choose

Click **choose** to add a VPN to your network.

**Additional Settings** Edit

**Device Templates** Choose

- under *User Profile* , click on **Add/Remove** and click on New

## Network Configuration

1 - Configure Network Policy - Inverse-Lab

2 - Configure Interfaces and User Access
Cancel    Save

**New User Profile**

**Name\***  (1-32 characters)

**Attribute Number\***  (1-4095)

**Default VLAN\*** Production-10 +

**Description**  (0-64 characters)

Allow user profiles to be managed with User Manager.

Optional Settings

- >> GRE Tunnels
- >> Firewalls
- >> QoS Settings
- >> User Profile Availability Schedules
- >> SLA Settings
- >> Client Classification Policy
- >> Advanced

- enter the profile name, the VLAN ID and create the default VLAN as the same as the attribute number
- create a new default VLAN, click on the + button



VLAN Name\*  (1-32 characters)

| VLAN ID                         | Type   | Value | Description  |
|---------------------------------|--------|-------|--|
| <input type="text" value="10"/> | Global |       | <input type="text" value="Production default VLAN"/> |

Note: By default, HiveManager applies definitions for a configuration object in a system-defined order (click ? for details). To rearrange the order, drag and drop the definitions into new positions.

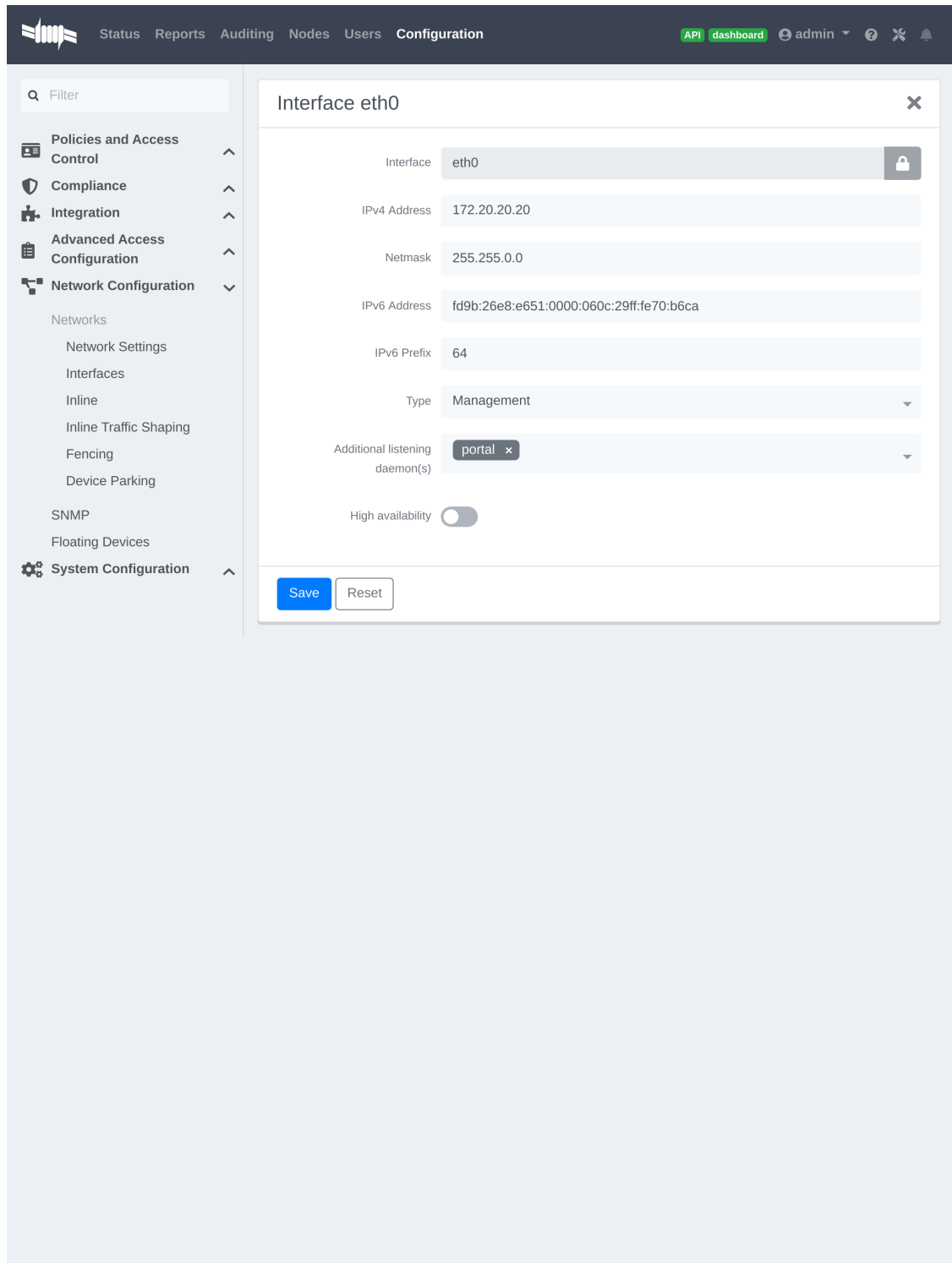
- click the Save button
- make sure the new user profile name is selected and then Save

Push the configuration to the Access Point: \* click on Continue \* select the AP and click Update - Update Devices \* under Configuration: select **Perform a complete configuration update for all selected devices** \* under HiveOS: select **Don't upgrade** \* click on Update \* wait until the AP is back online

## Configure PacketFence

Configure the *Production* interface to send the *Portal*:

- go to **Configuration → Network Configuration → Interfaces**
- under *Logical Name*, click on your interface name,
- *Additional listening daemon(s)*, Add **portal**
- click on **SAVE**



### 6.3.3. MAC Authentication/802.1X and Web Auth Configuration

In this case we want to be able to enable a MAC Authentication/802.1X and Web Auth SSID on the same wireless equipment. By default it's not possible to provide a MAC Authentication/802.1X SSID and a Web Auth SSID with the same switch configuration, but by using the *Switch Filters* it will be possible to do it.

We will assume that we have an up and running SSID (*YourSecuredSSID*) already configured with Mac Authentication/802.1X:

- from this documentation, we will assume that the VLANs tags are defined like following :
  - PacketFence Management VLAN: 1 IP address: 192.168.1.5
  - registration VLAN ID 2, subnet 192.168.2.0/24
  - isolation VLAN ID 3, subnet 192.168.3.0/24
  - production VLAN ID 10, subnet 172.16.1.0/24

Our SSID will be named *YourOpenSSID*, assuming that we want to provide a public Internet hotspot for example.

### Add a New SSID

You should create a new SSID, has explained before, secured or open, as you need.

### Configure Filters in PacketFence

Logon to your PacketFence server:

- Go to **Configuration → Advanced Access Configuration → Filter Engines**
- From the tab **Switch filters**,
- Go to the bottom of the configuration file and set the following section.

```
[enable_external_portal_on_guest_ssid]
status=enabled
description=enable_external_portal_on_guest_ssid
scopes=radius_authorize
param.0=ExternalPortalEnforcement=Y
top_op=and
param.1=VlanMap=N
condition=ssid == "YourOpenSSID"
```

Click on **SAVE**.

#### NOTE

The default configuration in the *Switch filters* for *ExternalPortalEnforcement* is set to **N**

## 6.3.4. Advanced Topics

### Roles (User Profiles)

PacketFence supports user profiles on the Aerohive equipment. To build a User Profile, go to **Configuration → User Profiles**, and create what you need. When you define the switch definition in PacketFence, the role will match the User Profile attribute number. For example:

```
roles=CategoryStudent=1;CategoryStaff=2
```

And in the Aerohive configuration, you have:

```
StudentProfile attribute number 1
StaffProfile attribute number 2
```

Last step is to allow the User Profile to be returned for a particular SSID. Go to **Configuration → SSIDs → Your\_SSID → User Profiles for Traffic Management**, and select the User Profiles you will return for the devices.

In version 6 or later of the HiveOS, we do return VLAN ID matching the number that the **User Profile** has. Create your **User Profile** in the HiveManager as usual, assign the matching VLAN, and in PacketFence configuration add the wanted VLAN ID in the section **Roles by VLAN**.

### Roles (User Profiles)

Since PacketFence 3.3.0, we now support user profiles on the AeroHIVE hardware. To build a User Profile, go to *Configuration → User Profiles*, and create what you need. When you define the switch definition in PacketFence, the role will match the User Profile attribute number. Example

```
roles=CategoryStudent=1;CategoryStaff=2
```

And in the AeroHIVE configuration, you have :

```
StudentProfile attribute number 1
StaffProfile attribute number 2
```

Last step is to allow the User Profile to be returned for a particular SSID. Go to *Configuration → SSIDs → Your\_SSID → User Profiles for Traffic Management\**, and select the User Profiles you will return for the devices.

In version 6 or later of the HiveOS, we do return VLAN ID matching the number that the **User Profile** has. Create your **User Profile** in the HiveManager as usual, assign the matching VLAN, and in PacketFence configuration add the wanted VLAN ID in the section **Roles by VLAN**.

## 6.4. Anyfi Networks

This section will discuss about the configuration of your Anyfi Gateway and Controller in order to use it with our configured PacketFence environment.

### 6.4.1. Deploy Anyfi Controller and Gateway

First thing, you will need to deploy the Anyfi Gateway and Controller on your network and configure basic connectivity between both of them.

When installing the Anyfi Gateway, have one interface in trunk mode for the packet bridge. In this example it will be **eth2** which is the last card on the machine.

## 6.4.2. Anyfi Gateway Basic Configuration

Connect to the gateway using SSH and enter configuration mode. Now you need to add the configuration for `br0` which will link the access point traffic to your network.

```
interfaces {
  bridge br0 {
    aging 300
    hello-time 2
    max-age 20
    priority 0
    stp false
  }
}
```

In this example `eth1` will be the management interface of the Anyfi Gateway and `eth2` will be the interface that will contain the outbound WiFi traffic.

```
interfaces {
  ethernet eth1 {
    address <your management ip address>/<mask>
    duplex auto
    smp_affinity auto
    speed auto
  }
  ethernet eth2 {
    bridge-group {
      bridge br0
    }
    duplex auto
    smp_affinity auto
    speed auto
  }
}
```

## 6.4.3. Open SSID Configuration

Still in configuration mode, configure the RADIUS server and SSID security.

```
service {
  anyfi {
    gateway ma-gw {
      accounting {
        radius-server <Management IP of PacketFence> {
          port 1813
          secret useStrongerSecret
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```

    }
  }
  authorization {
    radius-server <Management IP of PacketFence> {
      port 1812
      secret useStrongerSecret
    }
  }
  bridge br0
  controller <IP or FQDN of the Anyfi Controller>
  isolation
  nas {
    identifier anyfi
    port 3799
  }
  ssid DemoOpen
}
}

```

#### 6.4.4. Secure SSID Configuration

Still in configuration mode, configure the Anyfi Gateway to broadcast a WPA2 enterprise SSID.

```

service {
  anyfi{
    gateway secure-gw {
      authentication {
        eap {
          radius-server <Management IP of PacketFence> {
            port 1812
            secret useStrongerSecret
          }
        }
      }
    }
    bridge br0
    controller <IP or FQDN of the Anyfi Controller>
    isolation
    ssid DemoSecure
    wpa2 {
    }
  }
}
}
}

```

## 6.4.5. Deploy Access Point

You will now need to install CarrierWRT on a compatible access point and configure the Anyfi Controller in it. Depending on the access point you're using, the method to install CarrierWRT will vary. For specifics about the CarrierWRT installation, refer to Anyfi's documentation. Once this step is done, the SSID should be broadcasted.

## 6.5. Avaya

### 6.5.1. Wireless Controller

**NOTE** | To be contributed....

## 6.6. Aruba

### 6.6.1. All Aruba OS

In this section, we cover the basic configuration of the Aruba wireless controller for PacketFence via the web GUI. It was done on an Aruba Controller 200 software version ArubaOS 5.0.3.3, tested on a Controller 600 with ArubaOS 6.0 but it should apply to all Aruba models.

**CAUTION** | If you are already using your Aruba controllers and don't want to impact your users you should create new AAA profiles and apply them to new SSIDs instead of modifying the default ones.

**NOTE** | Starting with PacketFence 3.3, Aruba supports role-based access control. Read the Administration Guide under "Role-based enforcement support" for more information about how to configure it on the PacketFence side.

#### AAA Settings

In the Web interface, go to *Configuration* → *Authentication* → *RADIUS Server* and add a RADIUS server named "packetfence" then edit it:

- Set Host to PacketFence's IP (192.168.1.5)
- Set the Key to your RADIUS shared secret (useStrongerSecret)
- Click Apply

Under *Configuration* → *Authentication* → *Server Group* add a new Server Group named "packetfence" then edit it to add your RADIUS Server "packetfence" to the group. Click Apply.

Under *Configuration* → *Authentication* → *RFC3576* add a new server with PacketFence's IP (192.168.1.5) and your RADIUS shared secret (useStrongerSecret). Click Apply. Under *Configuration* → *Authentication* → *L2 Authentication* edit the MAC Authentication Profile called "default" then edit it to change the Delimiter to dash. Click Apply.

Under *Configuration* → *Authentication* → *L2 Authentication* edit the 802.1X Authentication Profile called "default" then edit it to uncheck the Opportunistic Key Caching under Advanced. Click Apply.

Under *Configuration* → *Authentication* → *AAA Profiles* click on the "default-mac-auth" profile then click on MAC Authentication Server Group and choose the "packetfence" server group. Click

Apply. Move to the RFC3576 server sub item and choose PacketFence's IP (192.168.1.5) click add then apply.

Under *Configuration* → *Authentication* → *AAA Profiles* click on the "default-dot1x" profile then click on 802.1X Authentication Server Group and choose the "packetfence" server group. Click Apply. Move to the RFC3576 server sub item and choose PacketFence's IP (192.168.1.5) click add then apply.

## Public SSID

In the Web interface, go to *Configuration* → *AP Configuration* then edit the "default" AP Group. Go in *Wireless LAN* → *Virtual AP* create a new profile with the following:

- AAA Profile: default-mac-auth
- SSID Profile: Select NEW then add an SSID (PacketFence-Public) and Network authentication set to None

## Secure SSID

In the Web interface, go to *Configuration* → *AP Configuration* then edit the "default" AP Group. Go in *Wireless LAN* → *Virtual AP* create a new profile with the following:

- AAA Profile: default-dot1x
- SSID Profile: Select NEW then add an SSID (PacketFence-Secure) and Network authentication set to WPA2

## Roles

Since PacketFence 3.3.0, we now support roles for the Aruba hardware. To add roles, go in *Configuration* → *Access Control* → *User Roles* → *Add*. You don't need to force a VLAN usage in the Role since we send also the VLAN ID along with the Aruba User Role in the RADIUS request. Refer to the Aruba User Guide for more information about the Role creation.

## WIPS

In order to use the WIPS feature in PacketFence, please follow those simple steps to send the traps to PacketFence.

First, configure PacketFence to be a trap receiver. Under *Configuration* → *SNMP* → *Trap Receivers*, add an entry for the PF management IP. By default, all traps will be enabled. If you want to disable some, you will need to connect via CLI, and run the **snmp-server trap disable <trapname>** command.

## WebAuth

First of all you will need to configure a guest VLAN.



Network > VLAN > Edit VLAN Get VLAN ID ← Back

Associated with  Port  Port-Channel

Wired AAA Profile

Port-Channel ID

---

**Port Selection**

---

**Commands** [View Commands](#)

Next, you will need to configure a RADIUS server.

Security > Authentication > Servers

Servers AAA Profiles L2 Authentication L3 Authentication User Rules Advanced

- Server Group
- RADIUS Server
  - PacketFence
  - Block Content
- LDAP Server
- Internal DB
- Tacacs Accounting Server
- TACACS Server
- XML API Server
- RFC 3576 Server
- Windows Server

**RADIUS Server > PacketFence**

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Host                                  | <span style="border: 1px solid red; border-radius: 5px; padding: 2px;">PF Cluster IP</span>  |
| Key                                   | <div style="border: 1px solid red; border-radius: 5px; padding: 2px;"> <input type="text" value="*****"/><br/> Retype: <input type="text" value="*****"/> </div> |
| Auth Port                             | <input type="text" value="1812"/>  |
| Acct Port                             | <input type="text" value="1813"/>  |
| Retransmits                           | <input type="text" value="3"/>   |
| Timeout                               | <input type="text" value="5"/> sec   |
| NAS ID                                | <input type="text"/>   |
| NAS IP                                | <input type="text"/>   |
| Enable IPv6                           | <input type="checkbox"/>   |
| NAS IPv6                              | <input type="text"/>   |
| Source Interface                      | vlanid <input type="text"/><br>ipv6addr <input type="text"/>   |
| Use MD5                               | <input type="checkbox"/>   |
| Use IP address for calling station ID | <input type="checkbox"/>   |
| Mode                                  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  |
| Lowercase MAC addresses               | <input type="checkbox"/>   |
| MAC address delimiter                 | <input type="text" value="none"/>  |
| Service-type of FRAMED-USER           | <input type="checkbox"/>   |

```
aaa authentication-server radius "packetfence"
host 192.168.1.5
key useStrongerSecret
```

Add your RADIUS server to a AAA group, under *Security* → *Authentication* → *Servers* → *Server Group*:

```
aaa server-group "packetfence"
auth-server "packetfence" position 1
```

Then define the **RFC 3576** server, which will allow you to do CoA.

RFC 3576 Server > **PF Cluster IP**

Show Reference

Save As

Reset

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| Key | <input type="password" value="....."/><br>Retype:<br><input type="password" value="....."/> |
|-----|---|

```
aaa rfc-3576-server "192.168.1.5"  
key useStrongerSecret
```


Next, you will need to create the policy that will redirect users to the PacketFence captive portal when they are not authenticated. Go to *Security* → *Authentication* → *L3 Authentication* → *Captive Portal Authentication Profile*.

Captive Portal Authentication Profile > GNet-Guest-cp-PF

Show Reference

Save As

Reset

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Default Role                                 | PF-Open-guest-logon   |
| Default Guest Role                           | PF-Open-guest-logon   |
| Redirect Pause                               | 3 sec   |
| User Login                                   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   |
| Guest Login                                  | <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| Logout popup window                          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   |
| Use HTTP for authentication                  | <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| Logon wait minimum wait                      | 5 sec   |
| Logon wait maximum wait                      | 10 sec  |
| logon wait CPU utilization threshold         | 60 %  |
| Max Authentication failures                  | 0   |
| Show FQDN                                    | <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| Authentication Protocol                      | PAP   |
| Login page                                   | https://portal.fqdn/Aruba   |
| Welcome page                                 | https://portal.fqdn/Aruba   |
| Show Welcome Page                            | <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| Add switch IP address in the redirection URL | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Adding user vlan in redirection URL               | <input type="checkbox"/>   |
| Add a controller interface in the redirection URL | address <b>Controller IP Address</b>   |
| Allow only one active user session                | <input type="checkbox"/>   |
| White List  | <input type="button" value="Delete"/><br><input type="text" value="svr-grp-rdssh"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/> |
| Black List  | <input type="button" value="Delete"/><br><input type="text" value="svr-grp-rdssh"/> <input type="button" value="Add"/> |
| Show the acceptable use policy page               | <input type="checkbox"/>   |
| User idle timeout                                 | seconds <input type="text"/>   |
| Redirect URL                                      | <input type="text"/>   |
| Bypass Apple Captive Network Assistant            | <input type="checkbox"/>   |

```

aaa authentication captive-portal "packetfence-externalportal"
default-role auth-guest
redirect-pause 3
no logout-popup-window
login-page https://192.168.1.5/Aruba
switchip-in-redirection-url

```

Now create the policy for the guest access, for example Internet only.

Add the authentication for the Captive Portal Profile via *Security* → *Authentication* → *L3 Authentication* → *Captive Portal Authentication Profile* → *Server Group*:

```

aaa authentication captive-portal "packetfence-externalportal"
server-group "packetfence"

```

Adjust the configuration of the AAA profile through *Security* → *Authentication* → *Profiles* → *AAA Profiles*:

- PF-Open-aaa\_prof
  - MAC
    - Authentication [mac\\_auth\\_packetfence](#)
    - MAC Authentication
      - Server Group PacketFence
    - 802.1X Authentication
      - Server Group
    - RADIUS Accounting
      - Server Group PacketFence
  - XML API server
  - RFC 3576 server
  - PF Cluster IP**

AAA Profile > PF-Open-aaa\_prof

Show Reference Save As Reset

|                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Initial role                       | PF-Open-guest-logon   |
| MAC Authentication Default Role    | guest   |
| 802.1X Authentication Default Role | guest   |
| L2 Authentication Fail Through     | <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| User idle timeout                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable<br>seconds <input type="text"/> |
| RADIUS Interim Accounting          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>                             |
| User derivation rules              | --NONE--  |
| Wired to Wireless Roaming          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>                             |
| SIP authentication role            | --NONE--  |
| Device Type Classification         | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>                             |
| Enforce DHCP                       | <input type="checkbox"/>  |

MAC Authentication Profile > mac\_auth\_packetfence

Show Reference Save As Reset

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Delimiter                                     | dash                                   |
| Case  | lower                                  |
| Max Authentication failures                   | <input type="text" value="0"/>         |
| Reauthentication                              | <input type="checkbox"/>               |
| Reauthentication Interval                     | <input type="text" value="86400"/> sec |
| Use Server provided Reauthentication Interval | <input type="checkbox"/>               |

MAC Authentication Server Group > PacketFence

Show Reference Save As Reset

Fail Through

Servers

| Name                        | Server-Type | trim-FQDN | Match-Rule |
|-----------------------------|-------------|-----------|------------|
| <a href="#">PacketFence</a> | Radius      | No        |            |

New

Server Rules

| Priority | Attribute                        | Operation                        | Operand                               | Type | Action | Value | Validated |
|----------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------|--------|-------|-----------|
| New      | <input type="button" value="▲"/> | <input type="button" value="▼"/> | <input type="button" value="Delete"/> |      |        |       |           |

RADIUS Accounting Server Group > PacketFence

Show Reference Save As Reset

Fail Through

Servers

| Name                        | Server-Type | trim-FQDN | Match-Rule |
|-----------------------------|-------------|-----------|------------|
| <a href="#">PacketFence</a> | Radius      | No        |            |

New

Server Rules

| Priority | Attribute                        | Operation                        | Operand                               | Type | Action | Value | Validated |
|----------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------|--------|-------|-----------|
| New      | <input type="button" value="▲"/> | <input type="button" value="▼"/> | <input type="button" value="Delete"/> |      |        |       |           |

RFC 3576 server > 10.10.2.34

Show Reference

Save As

Reset

|         |        |
|---------|--------|
| Key     | •••••• |
| Retype: | •••••• |

```
aaa profile "packetfence-externalportal"  
initial-role packetfence-portal  
radius-interim-accounting  
radius-accounting "packetfence"  
rfc-3576-server "192.168.1.5"
```

Define a policy to permit the traffic.

First add a destination, *Advanced Services* → *Stateful Firewall* → *Destinations*:

```
netdestination packetfence-portal  
host 192.168.1.5
```

Create an ACL for the redirection, *Security* → *Firewall Policies*:

Security > User Roles > Edit Role(PF-Open-guest-logon) > Edit Session (Auth-Guest-cp-PF)

User Roles System Roles Policies Time Ranges Guest Access

Rules

| IP Version | Source | Destination   | Service | Action | Log | Mirror | Queue | Time Range | Pause ARM Scanning | BlackList | Classify Media | TOS | 802.1p | Priority |
|------------|--------|---------------|---------|--------|-----|--------|-------|------------|--------------------|-----------|----------------|-----|--------|----------|
| IPv4       | user   | PF Cluster IP | tcp 80  | permit | Yes |        | Low   |            |                    |           |                |     |        |          |
| IPv4       | user   | PF Cluster IP | tcp 443 | permit | Yes |        | Low   |            |                    |           |                |     |        |          |

Add ↑ ↓ Delete

Done

Security > Firewall Policies > Edit Session (captiveportal)

User Roles System Roles Policies Time Ranges Guest Access

Rules

| IP Version | Source | Destination | Service         | Action          | Log | Mirror | Queue | Time Range | Pause ARM Scanning | BlackList | Classify Media | TOS | 802.1p | Priority |
|------------|--------|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----|--------|-------|------------|--------------------|-----------|----------------|-----|--------|----------|
| IPv4       | user   | controller  | svc-https       | dst-nat<br>8081 |     |        | Low   |            |                    |           |                |     |        |          |
| IPv4       | user   | any         | svc-http        | dst-nat<br>8080 |     |        | Low   |            |                    |           |                |     |        |          |
| IPv4       | user   | any         | svc-https       | dst-nat<br>8081 |     |        | Low   |            |                    |           |                |     |        |          |
| IPv4       | user   | any         | svc-http-proxy1 | dst-nat<br>8088 |     |        | Low   |            |                    |           |                |     |        |          |
| IPv4       | user   | any         | svc-http-proxy2 | dst-nat<br>8088 |     |        | Low   |            |                    |           |                |     |        |          |
| IPv4       | user   | any         | svc-http-proxy3 | dst-nat<br>8088 |     |        | Low   |            |                    |           |                |     |        |          |

Add ↑ ↓ Delete

Apply

Commands View Commands

Security > User Roles > Edit Role(PF-Open-guest-logon) > Edit Session (dhcp-acl)

User Roles System Roles Policies Time Ranges Guest Access

Rules

| IP Version | Source | Destination | Service  | Action | Log | Mirror | Queue | Time Range | Pause ARM Scanning | BlackList | Classify Media | TOS | 802.1p | Priority |
|------------|--------|-------------|----------|--------|-----|--------|-------|------------|--------------------|-----------|----------------|-----|--------|----------|
| IPv4       | any    | any         | svc-dhcp | permit |     |        | Low   |            |                    |           |                |     |        |          |

Add ↑ ↓ Delete

Done

Security > User Roles > Edit Role(PF-Open-guest-logon) > Edit Session (DNS\_external)

User Roles System Roles Policies Time Ranges Guest Access

Rules

| IP Version | Source | Destination  | Service | Action | Log | Mirror | Queue | Time Range | Pause ARM Scanning | BlackList | Classify Media | TOS | 802.1p | Priority |
|------------|--------|--------------|---------|--------|-----|--------|-------|------------|--------------------|-----------|----------------|-----|--------|----------|
| IPv4       | user   | host 8.8.8.8 | svc-dns | permit |     |        | Low   |            |                    |           |                |     |        |          |

Add ↑ ↓ Delete

Done

Security > Firewall Policies > Edit Session (Explicit\_Deny)

User Roles System Roles Policies Time Ranges Guest Access

Rules

| IP Version | Source | Destination | Service | Action | Log | Mirror | Queue | Time Range | Pause ARM Scanning | BlackList | Classify Media | TOS | 802.1p | Priority |
|------------|--------|-------------|---------|--------|-----|--------|-------|------------|--------------------|-----------|----------------|-----|--------|----------|
| IPv4       | any    | any         | any     | deny   | Yes |        | Low   |            |                    |           |                |     |        |          |

Add ↑ ↓ Delete

Apply

Commands [View Commands](#)

Source NAT on VLAN

```
ip access-list session "packetfence-externalportal"  
alias "user" alias "packetfence-portal" "svc-http" permit queue low  
alias "user" alias "packetfence-portal" "svc-https" permit queue low
```

Enable the "firewall allow-tri-session" :

```
firewall allow-tri-session
```

Source NAT per Application

```
ip access-list session "packetfence-externalportal"  
alias "user" alias "packetfence-portal" "svc-http" src-nat queue low  
alias "user" alias "packetfence-portal" "svc-https" src-nat queue low
```

Now add the newly created policy to the Captive Portal Profile, Security → User Roles:

Security > User Roles > Edit Role(PF-Open-guest-logon)

User Roles System Roles Policies Time Ranges Guest Access < Back

| Name             | Rule Count | Location |
|------------------|------------|----------|
| Auth-Guest-cp-PF | 2          |          |
| captiveportal    | 6          |          |
| dhcp-acl         | 1          |          |
| DNS_external     | 1          |          |
| Explicit_Deny    | 1          |          |

Add [Up] [Down] Delete

**Misc. Configuration**

Re-authentication Interval: 0 minutes (0 disables re-authentication. A positive value enables authentication 0-4096)

Role VLAN ID: Not Assigned

Bandwidth Contract Upstream: Not Enforced Per Role

Bandwidth Contract Downstream: Not Enforced Per Role

VPN Dialer: Not Assigned

L2TP Pool: Not Assigned (default-l2tp-pool)

PPTP Pool: Not Assigned (default-pptp-pool)

Captive Portal Profile: **L3 Authentication CP**

Captive Portal Check for Accounting:

Max Sessions: 65535 (0 - 65535)

Stateful NTLM Profile: Not Assigned

Stateful Kerberos Profile: Not Assigned

WISPr Profile: Not Assigned

Apply

Commands View Commands

Security > Authentication > L3 Authentication

Servers AAA Profiles L2 Authentication L3 Authentication User Rules Advanced

Captive Portal Authentication

- default
- Profile Name**
- Server Group PacketFence
  - Block content**
  - Block Content**
- WISPr Authentication
- VPN Authentication
- Stateful NTLM Authentication
- Stateful Kerberos Authentication

|   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| User Login  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Guest Login                                       | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Logout popup window                               | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Use HTTP for authentication                       | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Logon wait minimum wait                           | 5 sec                               |
| Logon wait maximum wait                           | 10 sec                              |
| logon wait CPU utilization threshold              | 60 %                                |
| Max Authentication failures                       | 0                                   |
| Show FQDN   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Authentication Protocol                           | PAP                                 |
| Login page  | <b>Block content</b>                |
| Welcome page                                      | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Show Welcome Page                                 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Add switch IP address in the redirection URL      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Adding user vlan in redirection URL               | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Add a controller interface in the redirection URL | address <b>Local Controller IP</b>  |
| Allow only one active user session                | <input type="checkbox"/>            |

```

user-role "packetfence-portal"
access-list session "packetfence-externalportal" position 1
access-list session "captiveportal" position 2
access-list session "guest-logon-access" position 3
access-list session "block-internal-access" position 4
access-list session "v6-logon-control" position 5
access-list session "captiveportal6" position 6
captive-portal "packetfence-externalportal"
    
```

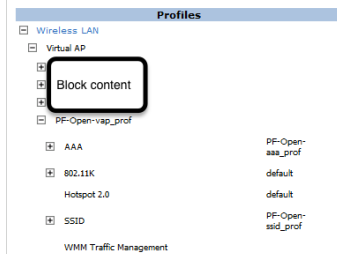
Finally create the SSID and associate the profile to it, **Virtual AP profile**:

```
wlan virtual-ap "packetfence-externalportal"
```

```
ssid-profile "packetfence-externalportal"  
aaa-profile "packetfence"
```

General AP settings and master-slave controller case.

Configuration > AP Group > Edit "PoC\_PacketFence"



Virtual AP > PF-Open-vap\_prof

Show Reference

Save As

Reset

Basic **Advanced**

### General

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| Virtual AP enable | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>          |
| VLAN              | <input type="text" value="Guest VLAN ID"/> ? |
| Forward mode      | tunnel                                       |

### RF

|               |                          |
|---------------|--------------------------|
| Allowed band  | all                      |
| Band Steering | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Steering Mode | prefer-5ghz              |

### Broadcast/Multicast

|   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| Dynamic Multicast Optimization (DMO)      | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Drop Broadcast and Multicast              | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Convert Broadcast ARP requests to unicast | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |



Basic Advanced

|  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| Virtual AP enable                              | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| VLAN   | Guest VLAN ID <span>?</span>        |
| Forward mode                                   | tunnel                              |
| Allowed band                                   | all                                 |
| Band Steering                                  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Steering Mode                                  | prefer-5ghz                         |
| Dynamic Multicast Optimization (DMO)           | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Dynamic Multicast Optimization (DMO) Threshold | 6                                   |
| Drop Broadcast and Multicast                   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Convert Broadcast ARP requests to unicast      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Authentication Failure Blacklist Time          | 3600 sec                            |
| Blacklist Time                                 | 3600 sec                            |
| Deny inter user traffic                        | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Deny time range                                | --NONE--                            |
| DoS Prevention                                 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| HA Discovery on-association                    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Mobile IP                                      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Preserve Client VLAN                           | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Remote-AP Operation                            | standard                            |
| Station Blacklisting                           | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Strict Compliance                              | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| VLAN Mobility                                  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| FDB Update on Assoc                            | <input type="checkbox"/>            |

AAA Profile > PF-Open-aaa\_prof

Show Reference

|                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Initial role                       | PF-Open-guest-logon   |
| MAC Authentication Default Role    | guest   |
| 802.1X Authentication Default Role | guest   |
| L2 Authentication Fail Through     | <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| User idle timeout                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable<br>seconds <input type="text"/> |
| RADIUS Interim Accounting          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>                             |
| User derivation rules              | --NONE--  |
| Wired to Wireless Roaming          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>                             |
| SIP authentication role            | --NONE--  |
| Device Type Classification         | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>                             |
| Enforce DHCP                       | <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| MAC Authentication Profile         | mac_auth_packetfence  |
| MAC Authentication Server Group    | PacketFence   |
| 802.1X Authentication Profile      |   |
| 802.1X Authentication Server Group |   |
| RADIUS Accounting Server Group     | PacketFence   |
| XML API server                     |   |
| RFC 3576 server                    | PF Cluster IP   |

SSID Profile > PF-Open-ssid\_prof

Show Reference

Save As

Reset

Basic Advanced

**Network**

Network Name (SSID) PF-Open

**802.11 Security**

Network Authentication  None  802.1x/WEP  WPA  WPA-PSK  WPA2  WPA2-PSK  
 Mixed

Encryption  Open  WEP

**Keys**

SSID Profile > PF-Open-ssid\_prof

Show Reference

Save As

Reset

Basic Advanced

|                        |   |                                       |
|------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| SSID enable            | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   |                                       |
| ESSID                  | PF-Open   |                                       |
| Encryption             | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> opensystem  | <input type="checkbox"/> static-wep   |
|                        | <input type="checkbox"/> dynamic-wep  |                                       |
|                        | <input type="checkbox"/> wpa-tkip   | <input type="checkbox"/> wpa-aes      |
|                        | <input type="checkbox"/> wpa-psk-tkip   |                                       |
|                        | <input type="checkbox"/> wpa-psk-aes  |                                       |
|                        | <input type="checkbox"/> wpa2-aes   | <input type="checkbox"/> wpa2-psk-aes |
|                        | <input type="checkbox"/> wpa2-psk-tkip  |                                       |
|                        | <input type="checkbox"/> wpa2-tkip  |                                       |
| DTIM Interval          | 1 beacon periods  |                                       |
| 802.11a Basic Rates    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 6 <input type="checkbox"/> 9 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 12 <input type="checkbox"/> 18 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 24<br><input type="checkbox"/> 36 <input type="checkbox"/> 48 <input type="checkbox"/> 54   |                                       |
| 802.11a Transmit Rates | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 6 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 9 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 12 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 18 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 24<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 36 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 48 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 54  |                                       |
| 802.11g Basic Rates    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 2 <input type="checkbox"/> 5 <input type="checkbox"/> 6 <input type="checkbox"/> 9 <input type="checkbox"/> 11<br><input type="checkbox"/> 12 <input type="checkbox"/> 18 <input type="checkbox"/> 24 <input type="checkbox"/> 36<br><input type="checkbox"/> 48 <input type="checkbox"/> 54                              |                                       |
| 802.11g Transmit Rates | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 6 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 9 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 11<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 12 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 18 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 24 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 36 |                                       |

|  |   |
|--|---|
|  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 48 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 54 |
| Station Ageout Time                              | <input type="text" value="1000"/> sec   |
| Max Transmit Attempts                            | <input type="text" value="8"/>  |
| RTS Threshold                                    | <input type="text" value="2333"/> bytes                                       |
| Short Preamble                                   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   |
| Max Associations                                 | <input type="text" value="64"/>   |
| Wireless Multimedia (WMM)                        | <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| Wireless Multimedia U-APSD (WMM-UAPSD) Powersave | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   |
| WMM TSPEC Min Inactivity Interval                | <input type="text" value="0"/> msec   |
| Override DSCP mappings for WMM clients           | <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| DSCP mapping for WMM voice AC                    | <input type="text"/>  |
| DSCP mapping for WMM video AC                    | <input type="text"/>  |
| DSCP mapping for WMM best-effort AC              | <input type="text"/>  |
| DSCP mapping for WMM background AC               | <input type="text"/>  |
| Multiple Tx Replay Counters                      | <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| Hide SSID  | <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| Deny_Broadcast Probes                            | <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| Local Probe Request Threshold (dB)               | <input type="text" value="0"/>  |
| Disable Probe Retry                              | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   |
| Battery Boost                                    | <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| WEP Key 1  | <input type="text"/><br>Retype:<br><input type="text"/>                       |
| WEP Key 2  | <input type="text"/><br>Retype:<br><input type="text"/>                       |

|   |                                      |         |                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|---------|----------------------|
| WEP Key 4                                     | <input type="text"/>                 | Retype: | <input type="text"/> |
| WEP Transmit Key Index                        | <input type="text" value="1"/>       |         |                      |
| WPA Hexkey                                    | <input type="text"/>                 | Retype: | <input type="text"/> |
| WPA Passphrase                                | <input type="text"/>                 | Retype: | <input type="text"/> |
| Maximum Transmit Failures                     | <input type="text" value="0"/>       |         |                      |
| BC/MC Rate Optimization                       | <input type="checkbox"/>             |         |                      |
| Rate Optimization for delivering EAPOL frames | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  |         |                      |
| Strict Spectralink Voice Protocol (SVP)       | <input type="checkbox"/>             |         |                      |
| 802.11g Beacon Rate                           | <input type="text" value="default"/> |         |                      |
| 802.11a Beacon Rate                           | <input type="text" value="default"/> |         |                      |
| Multicast Rate                                | <input type="text" value="default"/> |         |                      |
| Advertise QBSS Load IE                        | <input type="checkbox"/>             |         |                      |
| Advertise Location Info                       | <input type="checkbox"/>             |         |                      |
| Advertise AP Name                             | <input type="checkbox"/>             |         |                      |
| Enforce user vlan for open stations           | <input type="checkbox"/>             |         |                      |

**High-throughput SSID Profile >**

Show Reference

Save As

Reset

Basic

**General**

- High throughput enable (SSID)
- 40 MHz channel usage
- Very High throughput enable (SSID)
- 80 MHz channel usage (VHT)

**Transmit Beamforming**

- VHT - Explicit Transmit Beamforming

### High-throughput SSID Profile >

PF-Open-htssid\_prof

Show Reference

Save As

Reset

Basic Advanced

|  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| High throughput enable (SSID)                                  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 40 MHz channel usage   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Very High throughput enable (SSID)                             | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 80 MHz channel usage (VHT)                                     | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| BA AMSDU Enable  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Temporal Diversity Enable                                      | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| Legacy stations  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Low-density Parity Check                                       | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Maximum number of spatial streams usable for STBC reception    | 1                                   |
| Maximum number of spatial streams usable for STBC transmission | 1                                   |
| MPDU Aggregation   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Max received A-MPDU size                                       | 65535                               |
| Max transmitted A-MPDU size                                    | 65535 bytes                         |
| Min MPDU start spacing   | 0                                   |
| Short guard interval in 20 MHz mode                            | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Short guard interval in 40 MHz mode                            | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Short guard interval in 80 MHz mode                            | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| Supported MCS set  | 0-23 <--                            |
| VHT - Supported MCS map  | 9 9 9                               |
| VHT - Explicit Transmit Beamforming                            | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| VHT - Transmit Beamforming Sounding Interval                   | 25 msec                             |
| Maximum VHT MPDU size  | 11454                               |
| Maximum number of MSDUs in an A-MSDU on best-effort AC         | 2 MSDUs                             |
| Maximum number of MSDUs in an A-MSDU on background AC          | 2 MSDUs                             |
| Maximum number of MSDUs in an A-MSDU on video AC               | 2 MSDUs                             |
| Maximum number of MSDUs in an A-MSDU on voice AC               | 0 MSDUs                             |

Security > Authentication > Advanced

|                                       |                     |                   |                   |            |                               |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------|-------------------------------|
| Servers                               | AAA Profiles        | L2 Authentication | L3 Authentication | User Rules | <b>Advanced</b>               |
| <b>Authentication Timers</b>          |                     |                   |                   |            |                               |
| User Idle Timeout                     | 300                 | sec               |                   |            |                               |
| Authentication Server Dead Time (min) | 10                  |                   |                   |            |                               |
| Logon User Lifetime (min)             | 5                   |                   |                   |            |                               |
| User Interim stats frequency          | 600                 | sec               |                   |            |                               |
| <b>RADIUS Client</b>                  |                     |                   |                   |            |                               |
| NAS IPv4 Address                      | Local Controller IP |                   |                   |            |                               |
| Source Interface v4                   | <--                 | None              |                   |            |                               |
| NAS IPv6 Address                      | :::1                |                   |                   |            |                               |
| Source Interface v6                   | <--                 | None              |                   |            |                               |
| <b>DNS Query Interval</b>             |                     |                   |                   |            |                               |
| DNS Query Interval (min)              | 15                  |                   |                   |            |                               |
|                                       |                     |                   |                   |            | <a href="#">View Commands</a> |
| <b>Commands</b>                       |                     |                   |                   |            |                               |

The next step will be to configure the Aruba WiFi controller for WebAuth in PacketFence, add the switch with the model choice **Aruba Network**,

[Status](#)
[Reports](#)
[Auditing](#)
[Nodes](#)
[Users](#)
[Configuration](#)

[API](#)
[dashboard](#)
admin

---

Filter

- Policies and Access Control**
  - Roles
  - Domains
    - Active Directory Domains
  - Realms
- Authentication Sources
- Network Devices
  - Switches
  - Switch Groups
- Connection Profiles
- Compliance**
- Integration**
- Advanced Access Configuration**
- Network Configuration**
- System Configuration**

### New default Switch ✕

Definition
Roles
Inline
RADIUS
SNMP
CLI
Web Services
Advanced

IP Address/MAC Address/Range (CIDR)

Description

Type

Mode

Switch Group

Deauthentication Method

Use CoA  Use CoA when available to deauthenticate the user. When disabled, RADIUS Disconnect will be used instead if it is available.

CLI Access Enabled  Allow this switch to use PacketFence as a RADIUS server for CLI access.

External Portal Enforcement  Enable external portal enforcement when supported by network equipment.

VOIP

VoIPLLDPDetect  Detect VoIP with a SNMP request in the LLDP MIB.

VoIPCDPDetect  Detect VoIP with a SNMP request in the CDP MIB.

VoIPDHCPDetect  Detect VoIP with the DHCP Fingerprint.

Dynamic Uplinks  Dynamically lookup uplinks.

Controller IP Address  Use instead this IP address for de-authentication requests. Normally used for Wi-Fi only.

Disconnect Port  For Disconnect request, if we have to send to another port.

CoA Port  For CoA request, if we have to send to another port.

Create
Reset



Role by Switch Role

|              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| registration | registration  |
| isolation    |               |
| macDetection |               |
| inline       | inline        |
| REJECT       |               |
| default      | employees     |
| gaming       |               |
| guest        | internet-only |
| voice        | voice         |

Check the box **External Portal Enforcement**, in the Roles section, choose **Role by Switch Role**, as the registration role, enter your default role: **packetfence-portal** and choose the policy matching roles, for instance guest: **internet-only**.

### CLI authentication

In order to enable CLI login on the Aruba controller via the PacketFence server, you need to point management authentication to the RADIUS server you created while configuring the SSIDs in the previous sections above.

```
aaa authentication mgmt default-role read-only enable server-group PacketFence
```

## 6.6.2. Aruba Controller 200

In this section, we cover the basic configuration of the Aruba Controller 200 for PacketFence using the command line interface. We suggest you to use the instructions above for the Web GUI instead.

### VLAN definition

Here, we create our PacketFence VLANs, and our AccessPoint VLAN (VID 66). It is recommended to isolate the management of the thin APs in a separate VLAN.

```
vlan 2
vlan 3
vlan 5
vlan 10
vlan 66
```

## AAA Authentication Server

```
aaa authentication-server radius "PacketFence"
    host 192.168.1.5
    key useStrongerSecret
aaa server-group "Radius-Group"
    auth-server PacketFence
```

## AAA Profiles

```
aaa profile "default-dot1x"
    authentication-dot1x "default"
    dot1x-default-role "authenticated"
    dot1x-server-group "Radius-Group"
    radius-accounting "Radius-Group"
aaa profile "PacketFence"
    authentication-mac "pf_mac_auth"
    mac-server-group "Radius-Group"
    radius-accounting "Radius-Group"
```

## WLAN SSIDs: profiles and virtual AP

```
wlan ssid-profile "PacketFence-Public"
    essid "PacketFence-Public"
wlan ssid-profile "PacketFence-Secure"
    essid "PacketFence-Secure"
    opmode wpa2-aes
wlan virtual-ap "Inverse-Guest"
    aaa-profile "PacketFence"
    ssid-profile "PacketFence-Public"
wlan virtual-ap "Inverse-Secure"
    aaa-profile "default-dot1x"
    ssid-profile "PacketFence-Secure"
ap-group "Inverse"
    virtual-ap "Inverse-Guest"
    virtual-ap "Inverse-Secure"
    ids-profile "ids-disabled"
```

### 6.6.3. All Aruba Instant OS

Add your packetfence instance to your configuration:

```
wlan auth-server packetfence
```

```
ip 192.168.1.5
port 1812
acctport 1813
timeout 10
retry-count 5
key useStrongerSecret
nas-ip [Aruba Virtual Controller IP]
rfc3576
```

Add dynamic vlan rules and mac auth to your ssid profile:

```
wlan ssid-profile SSID
```

```
index 0
type employee
ssid ESSID
wpa-passphrase WPA-Passphrase
opmode wpa2-psk-aes
max-authentication-failures 0
vlan 1
auth-server packetfence
set-vlan Tunnel-Private-Group-Id contains 1 1
set-vlan Tunnel-Private-Group-Id contains 4 4
rf-band all
captive-portal disable
mac-authentication
dtim-period 1
inactivity-timeout 1000
broadcast-filter none
radius-reauth-interval 5
dmo-channel-utilization-threshold 90
```

## 6.7. Belair Networks (now Ericsson)

### 6.7.1. BE20

The Belair Networks BE20s are fairly easy to configure.

#### Add VLANs

On the BE20 Web Interface, click on **Eth-1-1**. By default, there will be nothing in there. You need

to first create an untagged VLAN (VLAN 0). In order to do that, you need to set the PVID, Reverse PVID, and the VLAN field to 0. Then click add.

Repeat that step for each of your VLANs by entering the proper VLAN ID in the VLAN field.

## AAA Servers

Once you have the VLANs setup, you need to add PacketFence into the AAA Server list. Go to *System* → *Radius Servers*. Click on **Add server**, and fill out the proper information.

- Ensure the Enabled checkbox is selected
- IP Address: Insert the IP Address of the PacketFence Management Interface
- Shared Secret: Insert the shared secret for RADIUS communication

When done, click on the **Apply** button.

## Secure SSID

Since the BE20 doesn't support Open SSID with MAC Authentication, we will only describe how to configure a WPA2-Enterprise SSID. First, we will configure the 5GHz antenna.

Click on *Wifi-1-1* → *Access SSID Config*. From the **Configuration for SSID** dropdown, select the 1 entry. Modify the fields like the following:

- SSID: Put your SSID Name you would like
- Type: Broadcast
- Use Privacy Mode: WPA2(AES) with EAP/DOT1x
- RADIUS NAS Identifier: You can put a string to identify your AP
- Radius Accounting Enabled: Checkbox Selected
- Radius Station ID Delimiter: dash
- Radius StationId Append Ssid: Checkbox Selected
- RADIUS Server 1: Select the AAA Server you created earlier

When done click **Apply**. Repeat the same configuration for the 2.4GHz Antenna (Wifi-1-2).

That should conclude the configuration. You can now save the configs to the flash by hitting the **Config Save** button on top of the Interface.

# 6.8. Bluesocket

## 6.8.1. MAC Authentication

### Bluesocket side

In order to configure mac authentication on the Bluesocket, you must have access to the controller.

First, you must configure a RadiusWebAuthServer in External Authentication and enable "Enable Radius MAC Authentication" and add Authentications rules.

This Authentication Rules needs to match with the PacketFence role you define.

Next, you need to create an SSID in Wireless → SSIDs and important, check for "Enable Captive Portal Authentication".

## PacketFence side

You have to define the ip address of the Bluesocket controller in PacketFence.

Since the vlan assignment is made by role, you need to enable role by switch role and define the role you previously created in the Bluesocket "Authentications rules".

For the deauthentication you need to select HTTPS and fill the Web Services section with the username and password to connect to the Bluesocket API.

## 6.8.2. 802.1x

First, you must configure a Radius1XAuthServer in External Authentication.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Authentication Server' configuration page in the ADTRAN Bluesocket web interface. The page is titled 'Edit Authentication Server' and is part of the 'External Authentication' section. The configuration includes fields for Type (Radius1XAuthServer), Name (PacketFenceAuth), Accounting Server (packetfence), IP Address, Port (1812), Shared Secret/Password, Backup Address, Backup Port, Backup Password, and Proxy settings. The Role is set to 'AllowAll'. There are buttons for 'Append Auth Rule', 'Update Authentication Server', 'Show', 'Delete', 'Create', and 'Back'.

Next you need to create a new SSID with Authentication WPA+WPA2 and select the radius server you previously created as the "RADIUS 802.1x Authentication Server"

The screenshot shows the 'Edit SSID' configuration page in the ADTRAN Bluesocket web interface. The page is titled 'Edit SSID' and is part of the 'Wireless' section. The configuration includes fields for Name/ESSID (Guest), Broadcast SSID (checked), Authentication (WPA+WPA2), Cipher (TKIP or AES-CCM), Enable Captive Portal Authentication (unchecked), RADIUS 802.1X Authentication Server (PacketFenceAuth), DynamicSteering (checked), Convert Multicast/Broadcast Network Traffic To Unicast (Convert broadcast and multicast to unicast), Dynamic Multicast Optimization (checked), Channel Utilization Threshold (80), Multicast Rate Optimization (checked), 802.11r Fast BSS Transition (unchecked), and Tunnel WLAN Traffic (unchecked). There is a button for 'Update SSID'.

## PacketFence side

You have to define the ip address of the Bluesocket controller in PacketFence.

Since the vlan assignation is made by role, you need to enable role by switch role and define the role you that exist in the Bluesocket.

For the deauthentication you need to select HTTPS and fill the Web Services section with the username and password to connect to the Bluesocket API.

## 6.9. Brocade

### 6.9.1. RF Switches

See the [Motorola RF Switches](#) documentation.

## 6.10. Cambium

### 6.10.1. cnPilot E410

#### 802.1X

To setup the Cambium cnPilot E410 AP to use 802.1x, first, you need to already have configured the VLANs that will be used in the AP under *Configure* → *Network*. Make sure that in *Configure* → *Network* → *Ethernet Ports*, the port is configured to **Trunk Multiple VLANs**, and the list of VLANs are allowed.

Next, go to *Configure* → *WLAN*, and click on **Add New WLAN**. Give it the desired ID, and enter your SSID, default VLAN, and select **WPA2 Enterprise** for Security.

The screenshot shows the 'Basic' configuration page for a WLAN. The settings are as follows:

- Enable:**
- Mesh:** Off (Dropdown menu)
- SSID:** Cambium-dot1x (Text input)
- VLAN:** 20 (Text input)
- Security:** WPA2 Enterprise (Dropdown menu)
- Radios:** 2.4GHz and 5GHz (Dropdown menu)
- VLAN Pooling:** Disable (Dropdown menu)
- Max Clients:** 127 (Text input)
- Client Isolation:** Disable (Dropdown menu)
- cnMaestro Managed Roaming:**  Enable centralized management of roaming for wireless clients through cnMaestro
- Hide SSID:**  Do not broadcast SSID in beacons
- Session Timeout:** 28800 (Text input)
- Inactivity Timeout:** 1800 (Text input)
- Drop Multicast Traffic:**  Drop the send/receive of multicast traffic

In the \*RADIUS Server\_ tab, enter the management IP address of PacketFence (VIP in case of a cluster) and the Radius secret for Authentication and Accounting servers.

Check the **Dynamic Authorization** and **Dynamic VLAN** boxes and save.

The screenshot shows the 'Radius Server' configuration page. It includes tabs for 'Basic', 'Radius Server', 'Guest Access', 'Usage Limits', 'Scheduled Access', 'Access', and 'Passpoint'. The 'Radius Server' tab is selected. The page is divided into several sections:

- Authentication Servers:** Three rows for configuring Host, Secret, Port, and Realm.
- Accounting Servers:** Three rows for configuring Host, Secret, and Port.
- Global Settings:**
  - Timeout:** 3 seconds (Timeout in seconds of each request attempt (1-30)).
  - Attempts:** 1 (Number of attempts before giving up (1-3)).
  - Accounting Mode:** Start-Stop (Configure accounting mode).
  - Accounting Packet:**  Enable Accounting-On messages.
  - Sync Accounting Records:**  Configure accounting records to be synced across neighboring AP's.
  - Server Pool Mode:**  Load Balance (Load balance requests equally among configured servers) or  Failover (Move down server list when earlier servers are unreachable).
  - NAS Identifier:** (NAS-Identifier attribute for use in Request packets. Defaults to system name).
  - Interim Update Interval:** 1800 (Interval for RADIUS Interim-Accounting updates (10-65535 Seconds)).
  - Dynamic Authorization:**  Enable RADIUS dynamic authorization (COA, DM messages).
  - Dynamic VLAN:**  Enable RADIUS assigned VLANs.
  - Proxy through cnMaestro:**  Proxy RADIUS packets through cnMaestro (on-premises) instead of directly to the RADIUS server from the AP.

At the bottom, there are 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons.

## MAC Authentication

To enable MAC authentication in the Cambium E410, go to *Configure* → *WLAN*, select your WLAN, set the Security to open and click on the tab **Access**.

In the **MAC Authentication** section, select Radius as the policy, and check the box for **Password** to use the MAC address as the password in the Radius request. Click on Save.

The screenshot shows the 'MAC Authentication' configuration dialog. It includes a dropdown for 'MAC Authentication Policy' set to 'Radius', a 'Delimiter' text field, and two checkboxes: 'Password' (checked) and 'Upper-Case' (unchecked). A 'Save' button is located in the top right corner.

## Web Authentication

To enable Web Authentication, go to your WLAN in *Configure* → *WLAN*, create a new WLAN with open Security, and click on the tab **Guest Access** to set the following:

- Enable: check the box
- Portal Mode: External Hotspot
- Access Policy: Radius
- Redirect Mode: HTTP
- External Page URL: [http://\\_IP\\_ADDRESS\\_OF\\_PACKETFENCE/Cambium](http://_IP_ADDRESS_OF_PACKETFENCE/Cambium)
- External Portal Type: Standard
- Success Action: Your preferred action.



- Prefix Query Strings in Redirect URL: check the box
- Redirection URL Query String: check Client IP
- Redirect: check HTTP-only



Click Save.

In the **Add Whitelist** section, add the IP address or domain name of your PacketFence server, then save.

| Basic  | Radius Server | Guest Access | Usage Limits | Scheduled Access | Access | Passpoint | Delete |
|--|---------------|--------------|--------------|------------------|--------|-----------|--------|
| <p><b>Enable</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p><b>Portal Mode</b> <input type="radio"/> Internal Access Point <input checked="" type="radio"/> External Hotspot <input type="radio"/> cnMaestro</p> <p><b>Access Policy</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="radio"/> Clickthrough <i>Splash-page where users accept terms &amp; conditions to get on the network</i></li> <li><input checked="" type="radio"/> Radius <i>Splash-page with username &amp; password, authenticated with a RADIUS server</i></li> <li><input type="radio"/> LDAP <i>Redirect users to a login page for authentication by a LDAP server</i></li> <li><input type="radio"/> Local Guest Account <i>Redirect users to a login page for authentication by local guest user account</i></li> </ul> <p><b>Redirect Mode</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="radio"/> HTTP <i>Use HTTP URLs for redirection</i></li> <li><input type="radio"/> HTTPS <i>Use HTTPS URLs for redirection</i></li> </ul> <p><b>WISPr Clients External Server Login</b> <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><b>External Page URL</b> <input type="text" value="http://[redacted]/Cambium"/> <small>URL of external splash page</small></p> <p><b>External Portal Type</b> <input type="text" value="Standard"/> <small>External Portal Type Standard:XXWF</small></p> <p><b>Success Action</b> <input type="radio"/> Internal Logout Page <input checked="" type="radio"/> Redirect user to External URL <input type="radio"/> Redirect user to Original URL</p> <p><b>Prefix Query Strings in Redirect URL</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p><b>Redirect URL</b> <input type="text" value="http://packetfence.org"/></p> <p><b>Redirection URL Query String</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Client IP <i>Include IP of client in the redirection url query strings</i></li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> RSSI <i>Include rssi value of client in the redirection url query strings</i></li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> AP Location <i>Include AP Location in the redirection url query strings</i></li> </ul> <p><b>Redirect</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTP-only <i>Enable redirection for HTTP packets only</i></p> <p><b>Proxy Redirection Port</b> <input type="text" value=""/> <small>Port number(1 to 65535)</small></p> <p><b>Session Timeout</b> <input type="text" value="28800"/> <small>Session time in seconds (60 to 604800)</small></p> <p><b>Inactivity Timeout</b> <input type="text" value="1800"/> <small>Inactivity time in seconds (60 to 28800)</small></p> <p><b>MAC Authentication Fallback</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <i>Use guest-access only as fallback for clients failing MAC-authentication</i></p> <p><b>Extend Interface</b> <input type="text" value=""/> <small>Configure the interface which is extended for guest access</small></p> <p><input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p> |               |              |              |                  |        |           |        |

**Add Whitelist**

IP Address or Domain Name

| IP Address   Domain Name  | Action  |
|---|---|
|  |  |

1 - 1 of 1 items   1 / 1   10 items per page

On PacketFence web admin, in the Switch configuration for your AP, Roles tab, check Role by Web Auth URL box, and enter [http://\\_IP\\_ADDRESS\\_OF\\_PACKETFENCE/Cambium](http://_IP_ADDRESS_OF_PACKETFENCE/Cambium) in the registration field.

Role by Web Auth URL

|              |                           |
|--------------|---------------------------|
| registration | http://[redacted]/Cambium |
| isolation    |                           |
| macDetection |                           |
| inline       |                           |
| default      |                           |
| guest        |                           |
| gaming       |                           |
| voice        |                           |
| REJECT       |                           |

## 6.11. Cisco

### 6.11.1. Aironet 1121, 1130, 1242, 1250, 1600

**CAUTION**

With this equipment, the same VLAN cannot be shared between two SSIDs. Have this in mind in your design. For example, you need two isolation VLAN if you want to isolate hosts on the public and secure SSIDs.

#### MAC-Authentication + 802.1X configuration

Radio Interfaces:

```
dot11 vlan-name normal vlan 1
dot11 vlan-name registration vlan 2
dot11 vlan-name isolation vlan 3
dot11 vlan-name guest vlan 5

interface Dot11Radio0
  encryption vlan 1 mode ciphers aes-ccm
  encryption vlan 2 mode ciphers aes-ccm
  ssid PacketFence-Public
  ssid PacketFence-Secure
```

```

interface Dot11Radio0.2
  encapsulation dot1Q 2
  no ip route-cache
  bridge-group 253
  bridge-group 253 subscriber-loop-control
  bridge-group 253 block-unknown-source
  no bridge-group 253 source-learning
  no bridge-group 253 unicast-flooding
  bridge-group 253 spanning-disabled

interface Dot11Radio0.3
  encapsulation dot1Q 3
  no ip route-cache
  bridge-group 254
  bridge-group 254 subscriber-loop-control
  bridge-group 254 block-unknown-source
  no bridge-group 254 source-learning
  no bridge-group 254 unicast-flooding
  bridge-group 254 spanning-disabled

interface Dot11Radio0.5
  encapsulation dot1Q 5
  no ip route-cache
  bridge-group 255
  bridge-group 255 subscriber-loop-control
  bridge-group 255 block-unknown-source
  no bridge-group 255 source-learning
  no bridge-group 255 unicast-flooding
  bridge-group 255 spanning-disabled

```

LAN interfaces:

```

interface FastEthernet0.2
  encapsulation dot1Q 2
  no ip route-cache
  bridge-group 253
  no bridge-group 253 source-learning
  bridge-group 253 spanning-disabled

interface FastEthernet0.3
  encapsulation dot1Q 3
  no ip route-cache
  bridge-group 254
  no bridge-group 254 source-learning
  bridge-group 254 spanning-disabled

interface FastEthernet0.5

```

```
encapsulation dot1Q 5
no ip route-cache
bridge-group 255
no bridge-group 255 source-learning
bridge-group 255 spanning-disabled
```

Then create the two SSIDs:

```
dot11 ssid PacketFence-Secure
vlan 3 backup normal
authentication open eap eap_methods
authentication key-management wpa

dot11 ssid PacketFence-Public
vlan 2 backup guest
authentication open mac-address mac_methods
mbssid guest-mode
```

Configure the RADIUS server (we assume here that the FreeRADIUS server and the PacketFence server are located on the same box):

```
radius-server host 192.168.1.5 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813 key
useStrongerSecret
aaa group server radius rad_eap
server 192.168.1.5 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
aaa authentication login eap_methods group rad_eap
aaa group server radius rad_mac
server 192.168.1.5 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
aaa authentication login mac_methods group rad_mac
```

## 6.11.2. Aironet 1600

CoA and radius:

```
radius-server attribute 32 include-in-access-req format %h
radius-server vsa send accounting
aaa server radius dynamic-author
client 192.168.1.5
server-key 7 useStrongerSecret
port 3799
auth-type all
```

### 6.11.3. Aironet (WDS)

To be contributed...

### 6.11.4. Wireless LAN Controller (WLC) or Wireless Services Module (WiSM)

In this section, we cover the basic configuration of the WiSM for PacketFence using the web interface.

- First, globally define the FreeRADIUS server running on PacketFence (PacketFence's IP) and make sure *Support for RFC 3576* (also called *Support for CoA*) is enabled. When the option is missing from your WLC, it is enabled by default.

The screenshot shows the 'RADIUS Authentication Servers' configuration page. On the left is a navigation menu under 'Security' with 'AAA' expanded to 'RADIUS'. The main area has a 'Call Station ID Type' dropdown set to 'IP Address' and a 'Use AES Key Wrap' checkbox (unchecked) with a note: '(Designed for FIPS customers and requires a key wrap compliant RADIUS server)'. Below is a table of RADIUS servers:

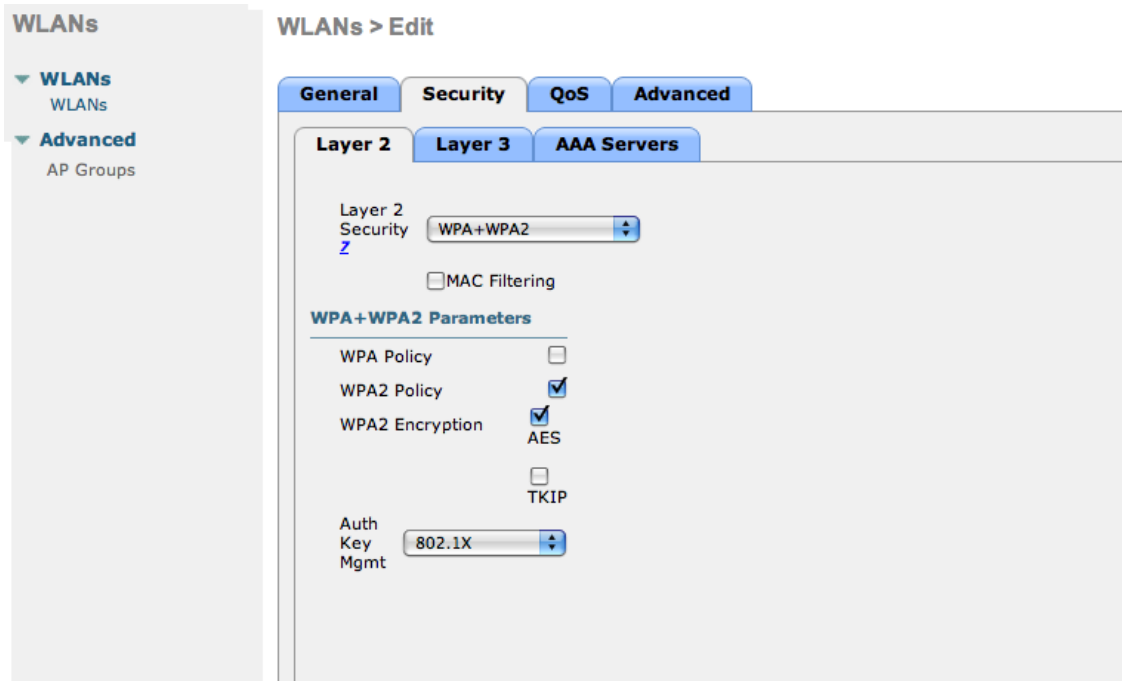
| Network User                        | Management                          | Server Index      | Server Address | Port | IPSec    | Admin Status                                |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------|----------------|------|----------|---|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <a href="#">1</a> | 172.19.0.122   | 1812 | Disabled | Enabled <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |

- Then we create two SSIDs:
  - PacketFence-Public: non-secure with MAC authentication only
  - PacketFence-Secure: secure with WPA2 Enterprise PEAP/MSCHAPv2

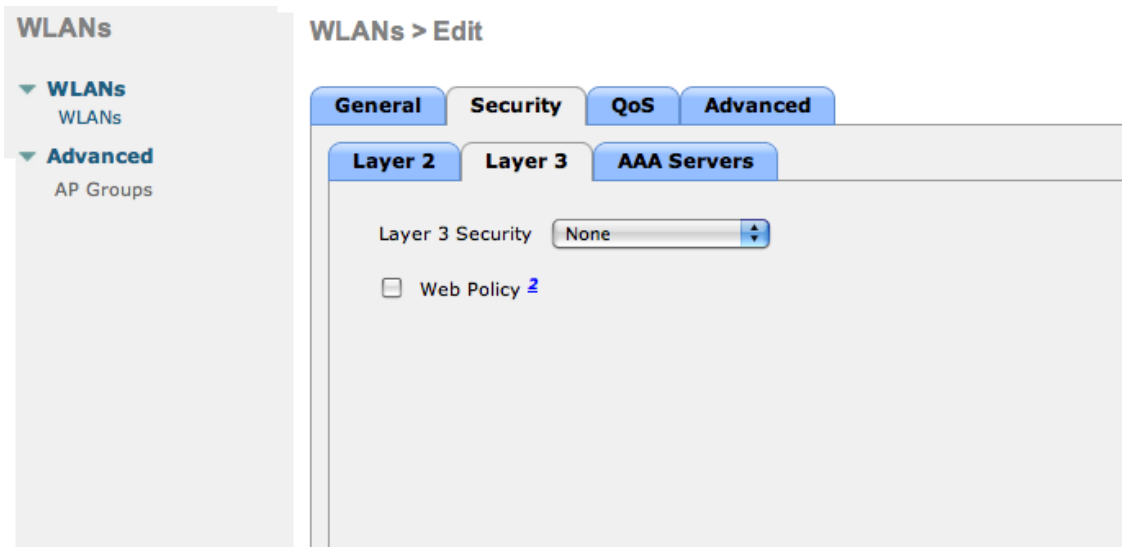
The screenshot shows the 'WLANs' configuration page. The navigation menu has 'WLANs' selected. The main area shows a table of WLANs:

| WLAN ID           | Type | Profile Name | WLAN SSID  | Admin Status | Security Policies  |
|-------------------|------|--------------|------------|--------------|--|
| <a href="#">2</a> | WLAN | Clients Web  | ██████████ | Enabled      | MAC Filtering <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>        |
| <a href="#">3</a> | WLAN | Interne      | ██████████ | Enabled      | [WPA2][Auth(802.1X)] <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |

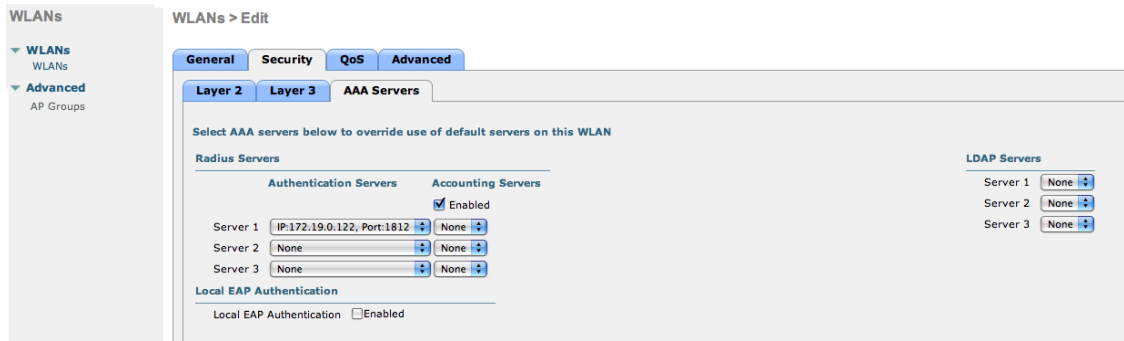
- In the secure SSID, make sure 802.1X is enabled and select the appropriate encryption for your needs (recommended: WPA + WPA2)



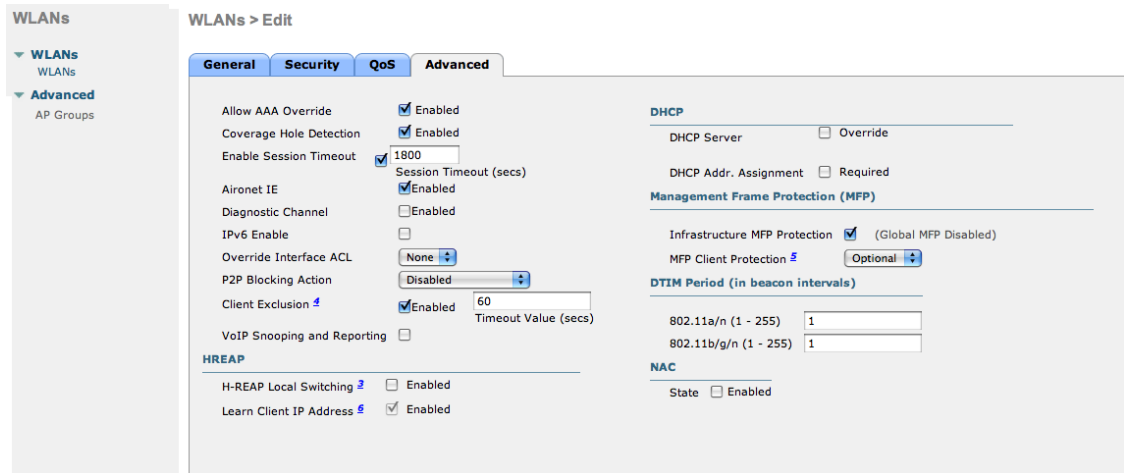
- No layer 3 security



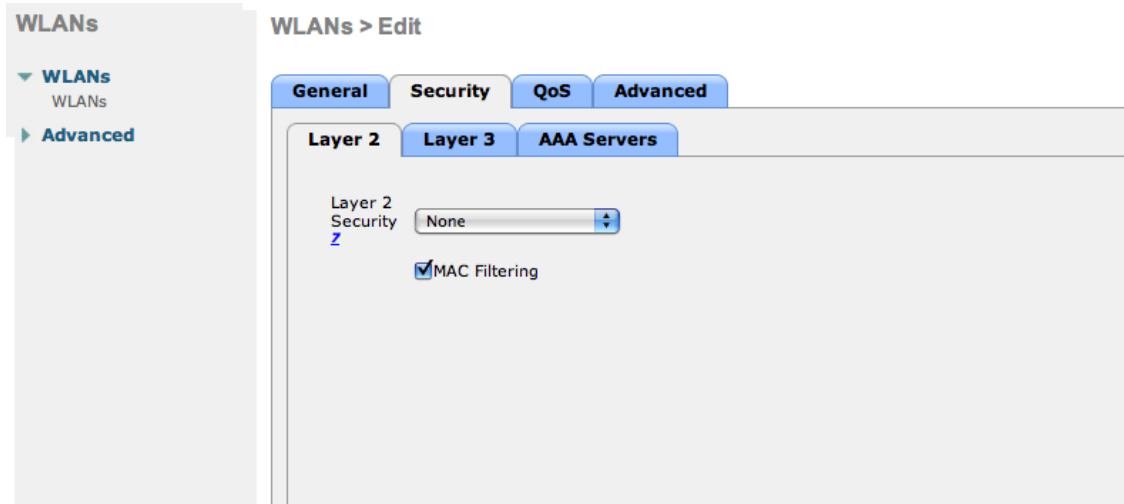
- We set the IP of the FreeRADIUS server



- VERY IMPORTANT: Allow AAA override (this allows VLAN assignment from RADIUS)

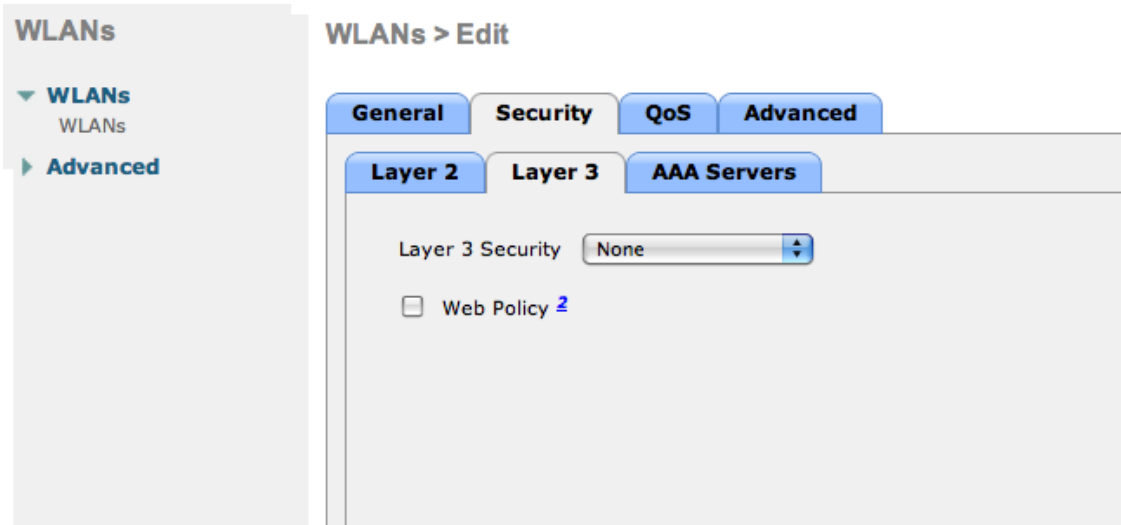


- Edit the non-secure SSID: Enable MAC authentication at level 2

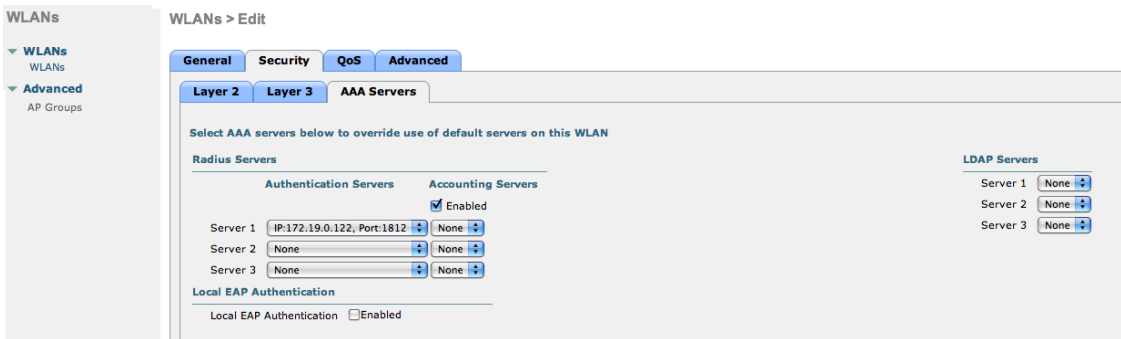


- Nothing at level 3

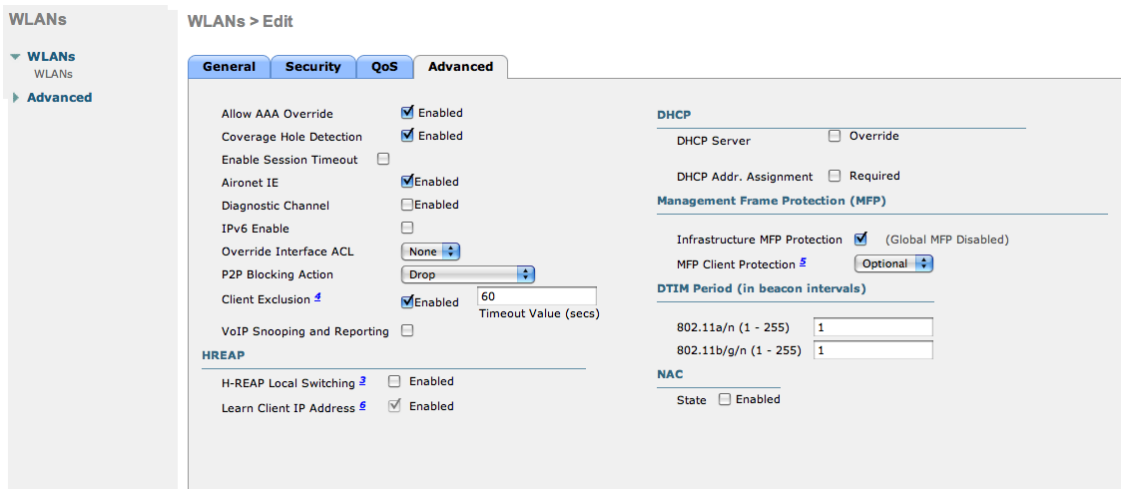




- We set the IP of the FreeRADIUS server



- VERY IMPORTANT: Allow AAA override (this allows VLAN assignment from RADIUS)



- Finally, in *Controller* → *Interfaces* tab, create an interface per VLAN that could be assigned

| Controller  |  | Interfaces     |                 |               |                |                                   |
|---|--|----------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>General</b><br><b>Inventory</b><br><b>Interfaces</b><br><b>Multicast</b><br><b>Network Routes</b><br>▶ <b>Internal DHCP Server</b><br>▶ <b>Mobility Management</b><br><b>Ports</b><br><b>NTP</b><br>▶ <b>CDP</b><br>▼ <b>Advanced</b><br>DHCP<br>Master Controller Mode<br>Spanning Tree |  | Interface Name | VLAN Identifier | IP Address    | Interface Type | Dynamic AP Management             |
|   |  |                | 19              | 172.19.0.142  | Static         | Enabled                           |
|   |  |                | 35              | 172.25.147.0  | Dynamic        | Disabled <input type="checkbox"/> |
|   |  |                | 36              | 172.25.246.0  | Dynamic        | Disabled <input type="checkbox"/> |
|   |  |                | 37              | 172.25.33.0   | Dynamic        | Disabled <input type="checkbox"/> |
|   |  |                | 38              | 172.25.118.0  | Dynamic        | Disabled <input type="checkbox"/> |
|   |  |                | 39              | 172.25.239.0  | Dynamic        | Disabled <input type="checkbox"/> |
|   |  |                | 40              | 172.25.252.0  | Dynamic        | Disabled <input type="checkbox"/> |
|   |  |                | 41              | 172.25.226.0  | Dynamic        | Disabled <input type="checkbox"/> |
|   |  |                | 19              | 172.19.0.141  | Static         | Not Supported                     |
|   |  |                | 18              | 172.25.202.0  | Dynamic        | Disabled <input type="checkbox"/> |
|   |  |                | 43              | 172.25.112.0  | Dynamic        | Disabled <input type="checkbox"/> |
|   |  |                | N/A             | 172.25.12.141 | Static         | Not Supported                     |
|   |  |                | N/A             | 1.1.1.1       | Static         | Not Supported                     |
|   |  |                | 45              | 172.18.0.249  | Dynamic        | Disabled <input type="checkbox"/> |
|   |  |                | 44              | 172.21.20.249 | Dynamic        | Disabled <input type="checkbox"/> |
|   |  |                | 46              | 172.20.20.249 | Dynamic        | Disabled <input type="checkbox"/> |

**WARNING** | When creating interfaces, it's important to configure DHCP servers. Otherwise, WLC will block DHCP requests.

You are good to go!

## Wireless LAN Controller (WLC) Web Auth

In this section, we cover the basic configuration of the WLC Web Auth for PacketFence using the web interface. The idea is to forward the device to the captive portal with an ACL if the device is in an unreg state and allow the device to reach Internet (or the normal network) by changing the ACL once registered. In the unreg state, the WLC will intercept the HTTP traffic and forward the device to the captive portal.

In this sample configuration, the captive portal uses the IP address 172.16.0.250, the administration interface uses the IP address 172.16.0.249 and the WLC uses the IP address 172.16.0.248. The DHCP and DNS servers are not managed by PacketFence (WLC DHCP Server, Production DHCP Server)

- First, globally define the FreeRADIUS server running on PacketFence (PacketFence's Administration Interface) and make sure *Support for RFC 3576* is enabled (if not present it is enabled by default)
- Then we create a SSID:
  - OPEN SSID: non-secure with MAC authentication only

CISCO MONITOR **WLANs** CONTROLLER WIRELESS SECURITY MANAGEMENT COMMANDS HELP FEEDBACK Save Configuration Ping Logout Refresh

WLANs > Edit 'OPEN SSID' < Back Apply

**General Security QoS Advanced**

Profile Name: OPEN SSID  
 Type: WLAN  
 SSID: OPEN SSID  
 Status:  Enabled

Security Policies: **MAC FILTERing**  
 (Modifications done under security tab will appear after applying the changes.)

Radio Policy: All  
 Interface/Interface Group(G): internet  
 Multicast Vlan Feature:  Enabled  
 Broadcast SSID:  Enabled  
 NAS-ID: CiscoWLC

**Foot Notes**  
 1 Web Policy cannot be used in combination with IPsec  
 2 FlexConnect Local Switching is not supported with IPsec, CRANITE authentication, Override Interface ACLs

CISCO MONITOR **WLANs** CONTROLLER WIRELESS SECURITY MANAGEMENT COMMANDS HELP FEEDBACK Save Configuration Ping Logout Refresh

WLANs > Edit 'OPEN SSID' < Back Apply

**General Security QoS Advanced**

**Layer 2 Layer 3 AAA Servers**

Layer 2 Security: None  
 MAC Filtering:

**Fast Transition**  
 Fast Transition:   
 Over the DS:   
 Reassociation Timeout: 20 Seconds

**Foot Notes**  
 1 Web Policy cannot be used in combination with IPsec  
 2 FlexConnect Local Switching is not supported with IPsec, CRANITE authentication, Override Interface ACLs

CISCO MONITOR **WLANs** CONTROLLER WIRELESS SECURITY MANAGEMENT COMMANDS HELP FEEDBACK Save Configuration Ping Logout Refresh

WLANs > Edit 'OPEN SSID' < Back Apply

**General Security QoS Advanced**

**Layer 2 Layer 3 AAA Servers**

Layer 3 Security: None  
 Web Policy 1

**Foot Notes**  
 1 Web Policy cannot be used in combination with IPsec  
 2 FlexConnect Local Switching is not supported with IPsec, CRANITE authentication, Override Interface ACLs

WLANs > Edit 'OPEN SSID'

General Security QoS Advanced

Layer 2 Layer 3 AAA Servers

Select AAA servers below to override use of default servers on this WLAN

Radius Servers

Radius Server Override interface  Enabled

Authentication Servers

Accounting Servers

LDAP Servers

Server 1 IP:172.16.0.249, Port:1812

Server 2 None

Server 3 None

Server 4 None

Server 5 None

Server 6 None

Radius Server Accounting

Interim Update

Foot Notes

1 Web Policy cannot be used in combination with IPsec

2 FlexConnect Local Switching is not supported with IPsec, CRANITE authentication, Override Interface ACLs

WLANs > Edit 'OPEN SSID'

General Security QoS Advanced

Quality of Service (QoS) Silver (best effort)

Application Visibility  Enabled

AVC Profile none

Netflow Monitor none

Override Per-User Bandwidth Contracts (kbps)

|                        | DownStream | UpStream |
|------------------------|------------|----------|
| Average Data Rate      | 0          | 0        |
| Burst Data Rate        | 0          | 0        |
| Average Real-Time Rate | 0          | 0        |
| Burst Real-Time Rate   | 0          | 0        |

Clear

Override Per-SSID Bandwidth Contracts (kbps)

|                   | DownStream | UpStream |
|-------------------|------------|----------|
| Average Data Rate | 0          | 0        |

Foot Notes

1 Web Policy cannot be used in combination with IPsec

2 FlexConnect Local Switching is not supported with IPsec, CRANITE authentication, Override Interface ACLs

WLANs > Edit 'OPEN SSID'

General Security QoS Advanced

Allow AAA Override  Enabled

Coverage Hole Detection  Enabled

Enable Session Timeout  1800

Session Timeout (secs)

Aironet IE  Enabled

Diagnostic Channel  Enabled

Override Interface ACL IPv4 None IPv6 None

P2P Blocking Action Disabled

Client Exclusion  Enabled 60

Timeout Value (secs)

Maximum Allowed Clients 0

Static IP Tunneling  Enabled

Wi-Fi Direct Clients Policy Disabled

Maximum Allowed Clients Per AP Radio 200

Clear HotSpot

DHCP

DHCP Server  Override

10.50.1.100

DHCP Server IP Addr

DHCP Addr. Assignment  Required

Management Frame Protection (MFP)

MFP Client Protection  Optional

DTIM Period (in beacon intervals)

802.11a/n (1 - 255) 1

802.11b/g/n (1 - 255) 1

NAC

NAC State Radius NAC

Load Balancing and Band Select

Foot Notes

1 Web Policy cannot be used in combination with IPsec

2 FlexConnect Local Switching is not supported with IPsec, CRANITE authentication, Override Interface ACLs

NOTE

On more recent controllers, the value 'Radius NAC' in the 'NAC State' setting will be called 'ISE NAC'.

The screenshot shows the Cisco WLC configuration page for 'OPEN SSID'. The 'Security' tab is active, displaying various security settings. The 'QoS' tab is also visible, showing a scan defer time of 300 seconds. The 'Advanced' tab is also present. The 'Security' section includes settings for Client user idle threshold, Off Channel Scanning Defer, FlexConnect, and various security features like Passive Client, Voice, Client Profiling, PMIP, and mDNS. The 'Foot Notes' section at the bottom provides additional information about Web Policy and FlexConnect Local Switching.

- Then you have to create two ACLs - one to deny all traffic except the required one to hit the portal (Pre-Auth-For-WebRedirect ) and the other one to allow anything (Authorize\_any) .

The screenshot shows the Cisco WLC configuration page for 'Pre-Auth-For-WebRedirect' under the 'Access Control Lists' section. The 'General' tab is active, displaying a table of deny counters. The table has columns for Seq, Action, Source IP/Mask, Destination IP/Mask, Protocol, Source Port, Dest Port, DSCP, Direction, and Number of Hits. There are six entries in the table, all with a 'Permit' action and a 'Number of Hits' of 0.

| Seq | Action | Source IP/Mask         | Destination IP/Mask            | Protocol | Source Port | Dest Port   | DSCP | Direction | Number of Hits |
|-----|--------|------------------------|--------------------------------|----------|-------------|-------------|------|-----------|----------------|
| 1   | Permit | 0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0      | 0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0              | UDP      | Any         | DNS         | Any  | Any       | 0              |
| 2   | Permit | 0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0      | 0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0              | UDP      | DNS         | Any         | Any  | Any       | 0              |
| 3   | Permit | 0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0      | 0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0              | UDP      | DHCP Client | DHCP Client | Any  | Any       | 0              |
| 4   | Permit | 0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0      | 0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0              | UDP      | DHCP Server | DHCP Client | Any  | Any       | 0              |
| 5   | Permit | 0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0      | 172.16.0.250 / 255.255.255.255 | Any      | Any         | Any         | Any  | Any       | 0              |
| 6   | Permit | 172.16.0.250 / 0.0.0.0 | 255.255.255.255 / 0.0.0.0      | Any      | Any         | Any         | Any  | Any       | 0              |

- Then the last step is to configure the WLC in PacketFence. Role by Web Auth URL

Role by Web Auth URL

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| registration | <code>http://172.16.0.250/Cisco::WLC</code> |
| isolation    |   |
| macDetection |   |
| inline       |   |
| REJECT       |   |
| default      |   |
| gaming       |   |
| guest        |   |
| voice        |   |

Role definition

## Role mapping by Switch Role

Role by Switch Role

|              |                          |
|--------------|--------------------------|
| registration | Pre-Auth-For-WebRedirect |
| isolation    | Isolation                |
| macDetection | macDetection             |
| inline       | Inline                   |
| REJECT       |                          |
| default      | Authorize_any            |
| gaming       |                          |
| guest        |                          |
| voice        | voice                    |

### Wireless LAN Controller (WLC) IPSK

In this section, we cover the basic configuration of the WLC IPSK feature. Starting from WLC 8.5 release, Cisco introduces the IPSK feature. Identity PSKs are unique pre-shared keys created for individuals or groups of users on the same SSID.

In this section we will cover the WLC configuration and the PacketFence configuration.

WLC Configuration:

- First, globally define the RADIUS server running on PacketFence (PacketFence's IP) and make sure *Support for RFC 3576* (also called *Support for CoA*) is enabled. When the option is missing from your WLC, it is enabled by default.
- Next, configure a new SSID like in the following screenshots

[General](#)
[Security](#)
[QoS](#)
[Policy-Mapping](#)
[Advanced](#)

[Layer 2](#)
[Layer 3](#)
[AAA Servers](#)

Layer 2 Security [6](#) WPA+WPA2 ▼  
 MAC Filtering [9](#)

**Fast Transition**

Fast Transition Disable ▼

**Protected Management Frame**

PMF Disabled ▼

**WPA+WPA2 Parameters**

WPA Policy   
 WPA2 Policy   
 WPA2 Encryption  AES  TKIP  CCMP256  GC  
 OSEN Policy

**Authentication Key Management [19](#)**

802.1X  Enable  
 CCKM  Enable  
 PSK  Enable



| General   | Security                                   | QoS  | Policy-Mapping                | Advanced   |
|---|--|--|-------------------------------|--|
|   | WPA2 Policy                                | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>        |                               |  |
|   | WPA2 Encryption                            | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES    | <input type="checkbox"/> TKIP | <input type="checkbox"/> CCMP256 <input type="checkbox"/> GC |
|   | OSEN Policy                                | <input type="checkbox"/>                   |                               |  |
| <b>Authentication Key Management <a href="#">19</a></b> |  |  |                               |  |
|   | 802.1X                                     | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable            |                               |  |
|   | CCKM                                       | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable            |                               |  |
|   | PSK  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable |                               |  |
|   | FT 802.1X                                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable            |                               |  |
|   | FT PSK                                     | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable            |                               |  |
|   | PSK Format                                 |  | ASCII ▾                       |  |
|   |  |  | .....                         |  |
|   | SUITEB-1X                                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable            |                               |  |
|   | SUITEB192-1X                               | <input type="checkbox"/> Enable            |                               |  |
|   | WPA gtk-randomize State <a href="#">14</a> |  | Disable ▾                     |  |
| <b>Lobby Admin Configuration</b>                        |  |  |                               |  |
|   | Lobby Admin Access                         | <input type="checkbox"/>                   |                               |  |

General Security QoS Policy-Mapping Advanced

Layer 2 Layer 3 AAA Servers

Select AAA servers below to override use of default servers on this WLAN

**RADIUS Servers**

RADIUS Server Overwrite interface  Enabled

Apply Cisco ISE Default Settings  Enabled

---

|          | Authentication Servers                      | Accounting Servers                          | EAP Parameters                  |
|----------|---|---|---------------------------------|
|          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled | Enable <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Server 1 | IP:172.20.135.4, Port:1812                  | IP:172.20.135.4, Port:1813                  |                                 |
| Server 2 | None  | None  |                                 |
| Server 3 | None  | None  |                                 |
| Server 4 | None  | None  |                                 |
| Server 5 | None  | None  |                                 |
| Server 6 | None  | None  |                                 |

**RADIUS Server Accounting**

Interim Update

General Security QoS Policy-Mapping Advanced

Allow AAA Override  Enabled

Coverage Hole Detection  Enabled

Enable Session Timeout

Aironet IE  Enabled

Diagnostic Channel [18](#)  Enabled

Override Interface ACL IPv4  IPv6

Layer2 Acl

URL ACL

PacketFence Configuration:

- First because there is no way to detect in the RADIUS request that the request is for an SSID configured for IPSK, you need to configure PacketFence to trigger IPSK on a connection profile. To do that, create a new connection profile, set a Filter based on the SSID (Example SSID PSK\_SSID), enable IPSK and set a default PSK key. So each time a device will connect on this specific SSID PacketFence will know that it has to answer with specific VSA attributes.
- Second step is to associate the device to a user, you have two ways to do it, the first one is to manually edit an user and in Miscellaneous tab fill the PSK entry (8 characters minimum) then edit a node and change the owner with the one you just edit before. The second way to

associate the device is to use a provisioner. There are also 2 ways to do it, use the "IPSK" provisioner (it will show you a page on the portal with the PSK key to use and the SSID to connect to, or use the "Windows/Apple Devices/Android" provisioner and configure it to do IPSK.

The screenshot displays the 'New Provisioner' configuration window in a network management interface. The window title is 'New Provisioner' with a 'windows' tag and a close button. The left sidebar shows a navigation menu with categories like 'Policies and Access Control', 'Compliance', 'Integration', 'Advanced Access Configuration', 'Network Configuration', and 'System Configuration'. The main form contains the following fields and options:

- Provisioning ID:** Text input field containing '10'.
- Description:** Text input field.
- Roles:** Dropdown menu with a note: 'Nodes with the selected roles will be affected.'
- SSID:** Text input field containing 'Your\_SSID'.
- Broadcast network:** Toggle switch (unchecked) with the note: 'Uncheck this box if you are using a hidden SSID.'
- Security type:** Dropdown menu set to 'WPA2' with the note: 'Select the type of security applied for your SSID.'
- EAP type:** Dropdown menu with the note: 'Select the EAP type of your SSID. Leave empty for no EAP.'
- Enable DPSK:** Toggle switch (unchecked) with the note: 'Define if the PSK needs to be generated.'
- Wifi Key:** Text input field.

At the bottom of the form, there are two buttons: 'Create' (in blue) and 'Reset' (in white).

## 6.11.5. Wireless LAN Controller (WLC) 9800

### General RADIUS Configuration

Go to Configuration → Security → AAA → Servers / Groups → Servers, click add

### Create AAA Radius Server

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Name*                       | <input type="text" value="PacketFence"/>    |
| IPv4 / IPv6 Server Address* | <input type="text" value="192.168.1.5"/>    |
| PAC Key                     | <input type="checkbox"/>                    |
| Key Type                    | <input type="text" value="Clear Text"/>     |
| Key* ⓘ                      | <input type="text" value="....."/>          |
| Confirm Key*                | <input type="text" value="....."/>          |
| Auth Port                   | <input type="text" value="1812"/>           |
| Acct Port                   | <input type="text" value="1813"/>           |
| Server Timeout (seconds)    | <input type="text" value="1-1000"/>         |
| Retry Count                 | <input type="text" value="0-100"/>          |
| Support for CoA             | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ENABLED |

Click Server Groups, click add

Create AAA Radius Server Group
✕

Name\*

Group Type

MAC-Delimiter

MAC-Filtering

Dead-Time (mins)

**Available Servers**

**Assigned Servers**

PacketFence

Go to Configuration → Security → AAA → AAA Method List → Authentication, click add

Quick Setup: AAA Authentication
✕

Method List Name\*

Type\*  ⓘ

Group Type  ⓘ

Fallback to local

**Available Server Groups**

radius  
ldap  
tacacs+

**Assigned Server Groups**

PacketFence-Group

Go to Configuration → Security → AAA → AAA Method List → Authorization, click add

**Quick Setup: AAA Authorization**

Method List Name\*

Type\*  ⓘ

Group Type  ⓘ

Fallback to local

Authenticated

**Available Server Groups** **Assigned Server Groups**

|                           |        |                   |
|---------------------------|--------|-------------------|
| radius<br>ldap<br>tacacs+ | ><br>< | PacketFence-Group |
|---------------------------|--------|-------------------|

Go to Configuration → Security → AAA → AAA Method List → Accounting, click add

**Quick Setup: AAA Accounting**

Method List Name\*

Type\*  ⓘ

**Available Server Groups** **Assigned Server Groups**

|                           |        |                   |
|---------------------------|--------|-------------------|
| radius<br>ldap<br>tacacs+ | ><br>< | PacketFence-Group |
|---------------------------|--------|-------------------|

Create WLANs

PF-Open SSID

Go to Configuration → Tags & Profiles → WLANs, click add

**Add WLAN** ✕

General **Security** Advanced

---

Profile Name\*  Radio Policy

SSID\*  Broadcast SSID

WLAN ID\*

Status

**Add WLAN** ✕

General **Security** Advanced

Layer2 **Layer3** AAA

---

Layer 2 Security Mode  Fast Transition

MAC Filtering  Over the DS

Transition Mode WLAN ID  Reassociation Timeout

Authorization List\*  ⓘ

**Add WLAN** ✕

General **Security** Advanced

---

Layer2 Layer3 **AAA**

Authentication List  ▼ ⓘ

Local EAP Authentication

↶ Cancel Apply to Device

Create Policy Profiles PF-Open

Go to Configuration → Tags & Profiles → Policy, click add

**Add Policy Profile** ✕

**General** Access Policies QOS and AVC Mobility Advanced

⚠ Configuring in enabled state will result in loss of connectivity for clients associated with this profile.

Name\*

Description

Status  ENABLED

Passive Client  DISABLED

Encrypted Traffic Analytics  DISABLED

**CTS Policy**

Inline Tagging

SGACL Enforcement

Default SGT

**WLAN Switching Policy**

Central Switching  ENABLED

Central Authentication  ENABLED

Central DHCP  ENABLED

Central Association  ENABLED

Flex NAT/PAT  DISABLED

↶ Cancel Apply to Device



**Add Policy Profile** ✕

General
Access Policies
QOS and AVC
Mobility
Advanced

RADIUS Profiling

Local Subscriber Policy Name

**WLAN Local Profiling**

Global State of Device Classification ⓘ

HTTP TLV Caching

DHCP TLV Caching

**VLAN**

VLAN/VLAN Group

Multicast VLAN

**WLAN ACL**

IPv4 ACL

IPv6 ACL

**URL Filters**

Pre Auth

Post Auth

↶ Cancel

📄 Apply to Device

✕
Add Policy Profile

---

General
Access Policies
QOS and AVC
Mobility
Advanced

**WLAN Timeout**

Session Timeout (sec)

Idle Timeout (sec)

Idle Threshold (bytes)

Client Exclusion Timeout (sec)

**DHCP**

IPv4 DHCP Required

DHCP Server IP Address

Show more >>>

**AAA Policy**

Allow AAA Override

NAC State

Policy Name

Accounting List  ⓘ ✕

Fabric Profile

Umbrella Parameter Map

mDNS Service Policy

**WLAN Flex Policy**

VLAN Central Switching

Split MAC ACL

**Air Time Fairness Policies**

2.4 GHz Policy

5 GHz Policy

↶ Cancel

Apply to Device

Go to Configuration → Tags & Profiles → Tags, under Policy click add

**Add Policy Tag** ✕

Name\*

Description

**WLAN-POLICY Maps: 1**

+ Add ✕ Delete

| WLAN Profile                     | Policy Profile |
|----------------------------------|----------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> PF-Open | PF-Open        |

⏪ ⏩ 1 ⏪ ⏩ 10 items per page 1 - 1 of 1 items

**RLAN-POLICY Maps: 0**

↶ Cancel
📄 Apply to Device

Go to Configuration → Wireless → Access Points

Click on the AP Name or MAC address

Under General → Tags, Select 'PF Enabled'

**Edit AP** ✕

General
Interfaces
High Availability
Inventory
Advanced

**General**

AP Name\*

Location\*

Base Radio MAC

Ethernet MAC

Admin Status ENABLED

AP Mode

Operation Status

Fabric Status

LED State ENABLED

CleanAir NSI Key

**Tags**

Policy

Site

RF

**Version**

Primary Software Version

Predownloaded Status

Predownloaded Version

Next Retry Time

Boot Version

IOS Version

Mini IOS Version

**IP Config**

CAPWAP Preferred Mode

Static IPv4 Address

Static IP (IPv4/IPv6)

Static IP (IPv4/IPv6)

Netmask

Gateway (IPv4/IPv6)

DNS IP Address

### PF-Secure SSID

Go to Configuration → Tags & Profiles → WLANs, click add

**Add WLAN** ✕

General Security Advanced

---

Profile Name\*  Radio Policy

SSID\*  Broadcast SSID  ENABLED

WLAN ID\*

Status  ENABLED

**Add WLAN** ✕

General Security Advanced

Layer2 Layer3 AAA

---

Layer 2 Security Mode  Fast Transition

MAC Filtering  Over the DS

**Protected Management Frame**

PMF  Reassociation Timeout

**WPA Parameters**

**Add WLAN** ✕

**WPA Parameters**

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| WPA Policy      | <input type="checkbox"/>   |
| WPA2 Policy     | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  |
| WPA2 Encryption | AES(CCMP128) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/><br>CCMP256 <input type="checkbox"/><br>GCMP128 <input type="checkbox"/><br>GCMP256 <input type="checkbox"/> |
| MPSK            | <input type="checkbox"/>   |
| Auth Key Mgmt   | 802.1x <input checked="" type="checkbox"/><br>PSK <input type="checkbox"/><br>CCKM <input type="checkbox"/>  |

**Add WLAN** ✕

General **Security** Advanced

Layer2 Layer3 **AAA**

Authentication List  ▼ ⓘ

Local EAP Authentication

Create Policy Profiles PF-Secure

Go to Configuration → Tags & Profiles → Policy, click add

### Add Policy Profile

General Access Policies QOS and AVC Mobility Advanced

⚠ Configuring in enabled state will result in loss of connectivity for clients associated with this profile.

Name\*

Description

Status  ENABLED

Passive Client  DISABLED

Encrypted Traffic Analytics  DISABLED

**CTS Policy**

Inline Tagging

SGACL Enforcement

Default SGT

**WLAN Switching Policy**

Central Switching  ENABLED

Central Authentication  ENABLED

Central DHCP  ENABLED

Central Association  ENABLED

Flex NAT/PAT  DISABLED

### Add Policy Profile

General Access Policies QOS and AVC Mobility Advanced

RADIUS Profiling

Local Subscriber Policy Name

**WLAN Local Profiling**

Global State of Device Classification ⓘ

HTTP TLV Caching

DHCP TLV Caching

**VLAN**

VLAN/VLAN Group

Multicast VLAN

**WLAN ACL**

IPv4 ACL

IPv6 ACL

**URL Filters**

Pre Auth

Post Auth

Add Policy Profile
✕

General

Access Policies

QOS and AVC

Mobility

Advanced

**WLAN Timeout**

Session Timeout (sec)

Idle Timeout (sec)

Idle Threshold (bytes)

Client Exclusion Timeout (sec)

Fabric Profile

Umbrella Parameter Map

mDNS Service Policy

**WLAN Flex Policy**

**DHCP**

IPv4 DHCP Required

DHCP Server IP Address

[Show more >>>](#)

VLAN Central Switching

Split MAC ACL

**Air Time Fairness Policies**

**AAA Policy**

Allow AAA Override

NAC State

Policy Name

Accounting List  ⓘ ✕

2.4 GHz Policy

5 GHz Policy

↶ Cancel

📄
Apply to Device

Go to Configuration → Tags & Profiles → Tags, under Policy click add



**Add Policy Tag** ✕

Name\*

Description

✓ **WLAN-POLICY Maps: 1**

+ Add ✕ Delete

| WLAN Profile                       | Policy Profile |
|------------------------------------|----------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> PF-Secure | PF-Secure      |

⏪ ⏩ 1 ⏪ ⏩
10 items per page
1 - 1 of 1 items

➤ **RLAN-POLICY Maps: 0**

↶ Cancel
📄 Apply to Device

Go to Configuration → Wireless → Access Points

Click on the AP Name or MAC address

Under General → Tags, Select 'PF Enabled'

Edit AP
✕

General

Interfaces

High Availability

Inventory

Advanced

**General**

AP Name\*

Location\*

Base Radio MAC

Ethernet MAC

Admin Status ENABLED

AP Mode

Operation Status

Fabric Status

LED State ENABLED

CleanAir NSI Key

**Tags**

Policy

Site

RF

**Version**

Primary Software Version

Predownloaded Status

Predownloaded Version

Next Retry Time

Boot Version

IOS Version

Mini IOS Version

**IP Config**

CAPWAP Preferred Mode

Static IPv4 Address

Static IP (IPv4/IPv6)

Static IP (IPv4/IPv6)

Netmask

Gateway (IPv4/IPv6)

DNS IP Address

↶ Cancel

+ Update & Apply to Device

### PF-WebAuth SSID

Create Redirect ACL for Guest Web authentication:

Go to Configuration → Security → ACL, click add

Use ACL Name: Pre-Auth-For-WebRedirect  
 For ACL Type, select IPv4 Extended

Edit ACL
✕

ACL Name\*

ACL Type

**Rules**

Sequence\*

Action

Source Type

Destination Type

Protocol

Log

DSCP

+ Add

× Delete

|                          | Sequence | Action | Source IP | Source Wildcard | Destination IP | Destination Wildcard | Protocol | Source Port | Destination Port | DSCP | Log     |
|--------------------------|----------|--------|-----------|-----------------|----------------|----------------------|----------|-------------|------------------|------|---------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 10       | deny   | any       |                 | any            |                      | udp      |             | eq domain        | None | Disable |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 16       | permit | any       |                 | any            |                      | tcp      |             | eq www           | None | Disable |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 17       | permit | any       |                 | any            |                      | tcp      |             | eq 443           | None | Disable |

⏪ ⏩ 1 ⏪ ⏩

items per page

1 - 3 of 3 items

↶ Cancel

🔄 Update & Apply to Device

Go to Configuration → Security → ACL, click add

Use ACL Name: Authorize\_any  
 For ACL Type, select IPv4 Extended

**Add ACL Setup**

ACL Name\*  ACL Type

**Rules**

Sequence\*

Source Type

Destination Type

Protocol

Log

Action

DSCP

| Sequence                    | Action | Source IP | Source Wildcard | Destination IP | Destination Wildcard | Protocol | Source Port | Destination Port | DSCP | Log     |
|-----------------------------|--------|-----------|-----------------|----------------|----------------------|----------|-------------|------------------|------|---------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> 10 | permit | any       |                 | any            |                      | ip       | None        | None             | None | Disable |

1 - 1 of 1 items

PF-WebAuth SSID creation

Go to Configuration → Tags & Profiles → WLANs, click add

**Add WLAN**

**General** Security Advanced

Profile Name\*  Radio Policy

SSID\*  Broadcast SSID

WLAN ID\*

Status

**Add WLAN** ✕

General **Security** Advanced

---

Layer2 **Layer3** AAA

---

Layer 2 Security Mode  Fast Transition

MAC Filtering  Over the DS

Transition Mode WLAN ID  Reassociation Timeout

Authorization List\*  ⓘ

**Add WLAN** ✕

General **Security** Advanced

---

Layer2 Layer3 **AAA**

---

Authentication List  ⓘ

Local EAP Authentication

Create Policy Profiles PF-WebAuth

Go to Configuration → Tags & Profiles → Policy, click add

### Add Policy Profile

General Access Policies QOS and AVC Mobility Advanced

⚠ Configuring in enabled state will result in loss of connectivity for clients associated with this profile.

Name\*

Description

Status  ENABLED

Passive Client  DISABLED

Encrypted Traffic Analytics  DISABLED

**CTS Policy**

Inline Tagging

SGACL Enforcement

Default SGT

**WLAN Switching Policy**

Central Switching  ENABLED

Central Authentication  ENABLED

Central DHCP  ENABLED

Central Association  ENABLED

Flex NAT/PAT  DISABLED

### Add Policy Profile

General Access Policies QOS and AVC Mobility Advanced

RADIUS Profiling

Local Subscriber Policy Name

**WLAN Local Profiling**

Global State of Device Classification ⓘ

HTTP TLV Caching

DHCP TLV Caching

**VLAN**

VLAN/VLAN Group

Multicast VLAN

**WLAN ACL**

IPv4 ACL

IPv6 ACL

**URL Filters**

Pre Auth

Post Auth

Add Policy Profile
✕

General

Access Policies

QOS and AVC

Mobility

Advanced

**WLAN Timeout**

Session Timeout (sec)

Idle Timeout (sec)

Idle Threshold (bytes)

Client Exclusion Timeout (sec)

Fabric Profile

Umbrella Parameter Map

mDNS Service Policy

**DHCP**

IPv4 DHCP Required

DHCP Server IP Address

[Show more >>>](#)

**WLAN Flex Policy**

VLAN Central Switching

Split MAC ACL

**Air Time Fairness Policies**

**AAA Policy**

Allow AAA Override

NAC State

Policy Name

Accounting List  ⓘ ✕

2.4 GHz Policy

5 GHz Policy

Go to Configuration → Tags & Profiles → Tags, under Policy click add

Edit Policy Tag
✕

⚠ Changes may result in loss of connectivity for some clients that are associated to APs with this Policy Tag.

Name\*

Description

▼ **WLAN-POLICY Maps: 3**

+ Add
✕ Delete

| WLAN Profile                        | Policy Profile |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> PF-Open    | PF-Open        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> PF-Secure  | PF-Secure      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> PF-WebAuth | PF-WebAuth     |

⏪ < 1 > ⏩
10 items per page
 1 - 3 of 3 items

➤ **RLAN-POLICY Maps: 0**

↶ Cancel

⏴
Update & Apply to Device

Go to Configuration → Wireless → Access Points

Click on the AP Name or MAC address

Under General → Tags, Select 'PF Enabled'



Edit AP
✕

**General**

Interfaces

High Availability

Inventory

Advanced

**General**

AP Name\*

Location\*

Base Radio MAC

Ethernet MAC

Admin Status ENABLED

AP Mode

Operation Status

Fabric Status

LED State ENABLED

CleanAir NSI Key

**Tags**

Policy

Site

RF

**Version**

Primary Software Version

Predownloaded Status

Predownloaded Version

Next Retry Time

Boot Version

IOS Version

Mini IOS Version

**IP Config**

CAPWAP Preferred Mode

Static IPv4 Address

Static IP (IPv4/IPv6)

Static IP (IPv4/IPv6)

Netmask

Gateway (IPv4/IPv6)

DNS IP Address

↶ Cancel

### PacketFence switch configuration

Now you will to create a new switch in PacketFence

Go to Configuration → Policies and Access Control → Switches → New Switch → default

Switch: 172.21.146.254 default ✕

Definition Roles Inline RADIUS SNMP CLI Web Services Basic Mode

IP Address/MAC Address/Range (CIDR) 172.21.146.254

Description Cisco WLC 9800

Tenant default   
 The tenant associated to this switch entry. Single tenant deployments should never have to modify this value.

Type Cisco::WLC

Mode Production

Switch Group Switches Default Values

Deauthentication Method Select option

Use CoA  Yes   
 Use CoA when available to deauthenticate the user. When disabled, RADIUS Disconnect will be used instead if it is available.

CLI Access Enabled  Default (No)   
 Allow this switch to use PacketFence as a RADIUS server for CLI access.

External Portal Enforcement  Yes   
 Enable external portal enforcement when supported by network equipment.

### Role mapping by VLAN ID

Role by VLAN ID  No

### Role mapping by Switch Role

Role by Switch Role  Yes

registration Pre-Auth-For-WebRedirect

isolation

macDetection

inline inline

Machine

REJECT

Room1

Room2

User

default Authorize\_any

### Role mapping by Web Auth URL

Role by Web Auth URL  Yes

registration http://192.168.1.5/Cisco::WLC

isolation

macDetection

inline

## 6.11.6. Troubleshooting ignored RADIUS replies

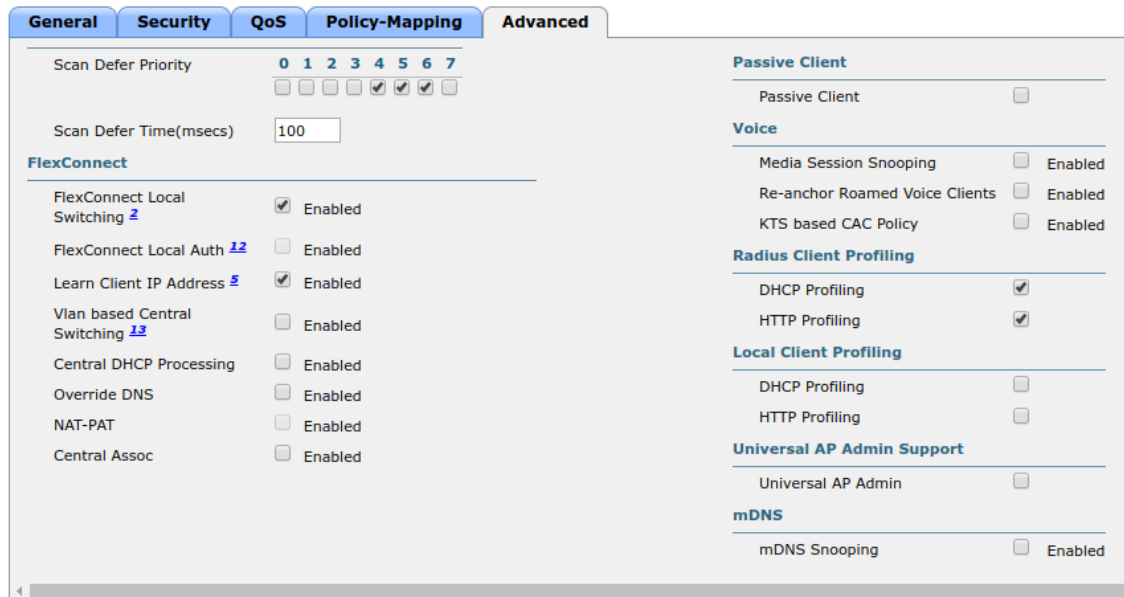
In the event the WLC ignores the RADIUS replies from PacketFence (you receive multiple

requests but access is never granted), validate the following elements :

- RADIUS secret is properly configured in PacketFence and the WLC controller.
- The SSL certificate used by PacketFence is not expired.

### 6.11.7. Device Sensor

When using a Cisco WLC, you can enable device sensor by making sure the configuration looks like the following screenshot:



**NOTE** Please refer to the wired configuration of Cisco equipment to learn more about device sensor.

## 6.12. CoovaChilli

This section has been created in order to help setting up a consumer grade access point running CoovaChilli integration with PacketFence to use UAM capabilities along with PacketFence feature set.

### 6.12.1. Assumptions

- You have a CoovaChilli capable access point running LEDE/OpenWRT, on which CoovaChilli is installed (CoovaChilli installation is not covered in this guide);
- A working PacketFence server, a CoovaChilli capable access point, and Internet is functional;
- A PacketFence WebAuth enforcement setup will be deployed;

### 6.12.2. Access Point and CoovaChilli Configuration

We go ahead and start by configuring the access point and CoovaChilli running on it.

These instructions assume that CoovaChilli is installed on the access point. If it's not, we suggest you search relevant information on the Internet to install CoovaChilli as there are too many

network equipment vendors that support CoovaChilli to accurately document this step here.

These instructions also assume that you have an SSID configured on the access point. Assumption is also made that the network interface / bridge is configured and assigned for the given SSID.

You should also make sure to have a default route properly configured on the access point (so that it can access the Internet) and that DNS resolution is working.

Also note that changes on the OpenWRT access point are done using SSH shell access.

Please note that any interface name reference might be different from one equipment vendor to another.

## Configure chilli

chilli configuration might differ from one equipment vendor to another one. Just make sure to follow these configuration guidelines and you should be all-set.

- chilli configuration file can be found under

```
/etc/config/chilli
```

- Edit the following parameters to integrate with PacketFence

```
option disabled 1      This should be commented out so that chilli is
marked as enabled
option dns1           Set this to a working DNS server (this will be used
by hotspot clients)
option dns2           Set this to a working DNS server (this will be used
by hotspot clients)
option ipup           /etc/chilli/up.sh (Depending on the package, the
script path might need to be adjusted)
option ipdown         /etc/chilli/down.sh (Depending on the package, the
script path might need to be adjusted)
option radiusserver1 PacketFence management IP
option radiusserver2 PacketFence management IP
option radiussecret   The RADIUS secret that will be used between chilli
and PacketFence
option radiusnasid    Access-point IP address
option dhcpif         The network interface / bridge assigned to the SSID
(Hotspot clients network)
option uamserver      http://PACKETFENCE_MANAGEMENT_IP/CoovaChilli
option ssid           SSID name
option nasip          Access-point IP address
option coaport        3799
```

A startup script might be required depending on the equipment vendor. Again, a quick documentation search on the Internet might be the best solution to find the best one

Once set up, you might want to activate chilli at boot (by using the startup script) and finally, reboot the AP.

### 6.12.3. PacketFence Configuration for CoovaChilli Integration

Having a working PacketFence installation and a configured LEDE / OpenWRT access point running CoovaChilli, the last step is PacketFence configuration for CoovaChilli integration.

To do so, login to the PacketFence web administration interface if it is not already done.

#### Switch configuration

Click on the 'Configuration' tab and select the 'Switches' menu option under the 'NETWORK' section on the left hand side.

On the bottom of the page, click the 'Add switch to group' button then select the 'default' to bring up the 'New Switch' configuration modal window.

'Definition' tab

- **IP:** Access-point IP address
- **Type:** CoovaChilli
- **Mode:** Production
- **External Portal Enforcement:** Checked

'RADIUS' tab

- **Secret Passphrase:** The RADIUS secret configured in the previous step

Click 'Save'

#### Portal configuration

It is required to disable HTTPS redirection by clicking the 'Configuration' tab and then the 'Captive portal' menu option on the left hand side. Make sure 'Secure redirect' is unchecked.

## 6.13. D-Link

### 6.13.1. DWL Access-Points and DWS 3026

**NOTE** | To be contributed...

## 6.14. Extreme Networks

### 6.14.1. Access points AP305C (managed by Extreme Cloud IQ Controller)

In such deployment, PacketFence communicates directly with the access points using RADIUS. The Extreme Cloud IQ controller is only used to configure access points in a central place.

## Web authentication

### Extreme Cloud IQ Controller

On the Extreme Cloud IQ Controller, there should already be two built-in IP Firewall policies:

- Redirect-only policy: this policy must have "redirect" rules
- Internet-access-only policy

On the Extreme Cloud IQ Controller, create two user profiles:

- Registration
  - VLAN: 5
  - Firewall rules: Enabled
  - IP Firewall Name: Redirect-only policy
  - Redirect URL: <http://192.168.1.5/Extreme::AP>
- Guest
  - VLAN: 5
  - Firewall rules: Enabled
  - IP Firewall Name: Internet-access-only policy

Still, on the Extreme Cloud IQ Controller, create a wireless network with the following configuration:

- SSID Authentication: Open
  - Enable Captive Web Portal: No
- MAC Authentication tab
  - Enable MAC authentication: Yes
  - Authentication protocol: CHAP
  - Authenticate via RADIUS server
    - Create a RADIUS group with an External RADIUS Server
      - Permit Dynamic Change Of Authorization Messages (RFC 3576): Enabled
  - User access settings
    - Apply a different user profile to various clients and user groups: Enabled
      - Allow user profile assignment using RADIUS attributes in addition to the three tunnel RADIUS attributes: Enabled
        - Standard RADIUS Attribute: Filter-Id

Under User access settings, you need to create following rules:

Table 1. User Access Settings rules

| User profile name | VLAN/VLAN Group | Assignment rules                   |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| Registration      | 5               | If Filter-ID equals "Registration" |
| Guest             | 5               | If Filter-ID equals "Guest"        |

## PacketFence

Create a switch with following configuration:

- Definition tab
  - Identifier: subnet of your Extreme AP
  - External portal enforcement: Yes
  - Deauthentication method: RADIUS
- Roles tab
  - Role by Switch Role: Yes
    - registration: Registration
    - guest: Guest

## 6.15. Extricom

### 6.15.1. EXSW Wireless Switches (Controllers)

In order to have the Extricom controller working with PacketFence, you need to define two ESSID definition, one for the "public" network, and one for the "secure" network. This can be done under a very short time period since Extricom supports RADIUS assigned VLANs out of the box.

You first need to configure you RADIUS server. This is done under the: *WLAN Settings* → *RADIUS* tab. Enter the PacketFence RADIUS server information. For the ESSID configuration. in the administration UI, go to *WLAN Settings* → *ESSID definitions*. Create the profiles per the following:

#### Public SSID

- MAC Authentication must be ticked
- Encryption method needs to be set to None
- Select PacketFence as the MAC Authentication RADIUS server (previously added)

#### Secure SSID

- Encryption method needs to be set to WPA Enterprise/WPA2 Enterprise
- AES only needs to be selected
- Select PacketFence as the RADIUS server (previously added)

The final step is to enable SNMP Agent and SNMP Traps on the controller. This is done under the following tab in the administrative UI: *Advanced* → *SNMP*.

## 6.16. Fortinet FortiGate

This section shows how to configure a 802.1X SSID on a Fortigate 50E running on FortiOS 5.4.

You will need to have the CLI access on the Fortigate to do the configuration.



## 6.16.1. RADIUS

```
FGT50E # config user radius
FGT50E (radius) # edit packetfence
new entry 'packetfence' added
FGT50E (packetfence) # set server 192.168.1.5
FGT50E (packetfence) # set secret useStrongerSecret
FGT50E (packetfence) # set nas-ip 192.168.1.1
FGT50E (packetfence) # set radius-coa enable
FGT50E (packetfence) # config accounting-server
FGT50E (accounting-server) # edit 1
new entry '1' added
FGT50E (1) # set status enable
FGT50E (1) # set server 192.168.1.5
FGT50E (1) # set secret useStrongerSecret
FGT50E (1) # end
FGT50E (packetfence) # end
```

## 6.16.2. 802.1X SSID

```
FGT50E #config wireless-controller vap
FGT50E (vap) # edit PF-Secure
new entry 'PF-Secure' added
FGT50E (PF-Secure) # edit "PF-Secure"
FGT50E (PF-Secure) # set vdom "root"
FGT50E (PF-Secure) # set ssid "PF-Secure"
FGT50E (PF-Secure) # set security wpa2-only-enterprise
FGT50E (PF-Secure) # set auth radius
FGT50E (PF-Secure) # set radius-server "packetfence"
FGT50E (PF-Secure) # set schedule "always"
FGT50E (PF-Secure) # set local-bridging enable
FGT50E (PF-Secure) # set dynamic-vlan enable
FGT50E (PF-Secure) # end
```

## 6.17. Hostapd

### 6.17.1. Introduction

This section will provide an example for the configuration of an open SSID (not encrypted) and a secure SSID (802.1X). You will need to install wpa2 and hostapd. These two SSIDs will do RADIUS authentication against PacketFence. You can not have both SSID configured on the same access point at the same time, there is a limitation with the DAE server.

## 6.17.2. Assumptions

- You have a configured PacketFence environment with working test equipment
- The management IP of PacketFence will be 192.168.1.10 and has s3cr3t as its RADIUS shared secret
- You have an access point with OpenWrt Chaos Calmer 15.05 installed

## 6.17.3. Quick installation

### Packages Installation

You can install the packages from the web interface of OpenWrt.

Go to **System → Software**

First update the repos by clicking the button Update lists if it's not up to date.

Then you will have to install the packages of Hostapd and wpa.

Go to the tab 'Available packages' and then search for the package hostapd into the 'Filter:' field.

Click Install the hostapd-common package, the actual version is 2015-03-25-1.

Do the same process for the wpa package version 2015-03-25-1.

#### NOTE

You will need the packages hostapd-common and wpa if they are not installed by default.

### Dynamic VLAN Configuration

Connect using SSH to the AP and create the file : /etc/config/hostapd.vlan

```
* wlan0.#
```

### Hostapd Configuration

You will need to modify the hostapd script that comes with the package that we previously installed.

Connect using SSH to the AP and run these commands:

```
cd /lib/netifd/  
mv hostapd.sh hostapd.sh.old  
opkg install curl  
curl --insecure https://github.com/inverse-  
inc/packetfence/tree/devel/addons/hostapd/hostapd-15.05.sh > hostapd.sh  
wifi
```

## Configure the SSIDs

To configure the PF-Open SSID, we will edit the file `/etc/config/wireless`:

```
# Definition of the radio
config wifi-device 'radio0'
    option type 'mac80211'
    option channel '11'
    option hwmode '11g'
    option path 'pci0000:00/0000:00:00.0'
    option htmode 'HT20'

# Configuration of the Open SSID
    option device 'radio0'
    option mode 'ap'
    option vlan_file '/etc/config/hostapd.vlan'
    option vlan_tagged_interface 'eth0'
    option vlan_naming '0'
    option dynamic_vlan '2'
    option auth_port '1812'
    option auth_server '192.168.1.10'
    option auth_secret 's3cr3t'
    option acct_port '1813'
    option acct_server '192.168.1.10'
    option acct_secret 's3cr3t'
    option dae_port '3799'
    option dae_client '192.168.1.10'
    option dae_secret 's3cr3t'
    option nasid 'Lobby'
    option encryption 'none'
    option ssid 'OpenWRT-Open'
```

Configure the PF-Secure SSID:

```
# Definition of the radio
config wifi-device 'radio0'
    option type 'mac80211'
    option channel '11'
    option hwmode '11g'
    option path 'pci0000:00/0000:00:00.0'
    option htmode 'HT20'

config wifi-iface
    option device 'radio0'
    option mode 'ap'
    option vlan_file '/etc/config/hostapd.vlan'
    option vlan_tagged_interface 'eth0'
```

```
option vlan_naming '0'  
option dynamic_vlan '2'  
option auth_port '1812'  
option auth_server '192.168.1.10'  
option auth_secret 's3cr3t'  
option acct_port '1813'  
option acct_server '192.168.1.10'  
option acct_secret 's3cr3t'  
option dae_port '3799'  
option dae_client '192.168.1.10'  
option dae_secret 's3cr3t'  
option nasid 'Lobby'  
option encryption 'wpa2'  
option ssid 'OpenWRT-Secure'
```

In order to apply this configuration, when you are connected using SSH on the AP, run the command 'wifi'. It will reload the configuration and broadcast the SSID. If you want to debug, you can use the command 'logread'.

#### NOTE

It's known that you can't put 2 SSIDs with the same dae server at the same time. The deauthentication will not work on the second SSID.

## PacketFence Configuration

Log in to the PacketFence administration web page and go under **Configuration → Policies and Access Control → Switches → Add switch**.

Definition:

- **IP Address/MAC Address/Range (CIDR):** IP of your access point
- **Type:** Hostapd
- **Mode:** production
- **Deauthentication Method:** RADIUS
- **Dynamic Uplinks:** Checked

Roles:

- **Role by VLAN ID:** Checked
- **Registration:** Your registration VLAN ID
- **Isolation:** Your isolation VLAN ID

RADIUS:

- **Secret Passphrase:** s3cr3t

Save this configuration by clicking the 'Save' button.

## Troubleshoot

There are few things you can do/check to see if your configuration is working.

To check the wireless configuration: `uci show wireless` or `cat /etc/config/wireless`

To check if your configuration (depend on the equipment) is correctly set into the Hostapd configuration file: `cat /var/run/hostapd-phy0.conf`

## 6.18. Huawei

### 6.18.1. AC6605 Controller

PacketFence supports this controller with the following technologies:

- Wireless 802.1X
- Wireless MAC Authentication

#### Controller configuration

Setup NTP server:

```
<AC>system-view
[AC] ntp-service unicast-server 208.69.56.110
```

Setup the radius server (@IP of PacketFence) authentication + accounting:

**NOTE** | In this configuration I will use the ip address of the VIP of PacketFence: 192.168.1.2; Registration VLAN : 145, Isolation VLAN : 146

```
<AC>system-view
[AC] radius-server template radius_packetfence
[AC-radius-radius_packetfence] radius-server authentication 192.168.1.2 1812
weight 80
[AC-radius-radius_packetfence] radius-server accounting 192.168.1.2 1813 weight
80
[AC-radius-radius_packetfence] radius-server shared-key cipher s3cr3t
[AC-radius-radius_packetfence] undo radius-server user-name domain-included
[AC-radius-radius_packetfence] quit
[AC] radius-server authorization 192.168.1.2 shared-key cipher s3cr3t server-
group radius_packetfence
[AC] aaa
[AC-aaa] authentication-scheme radius_packetfence
[AC-aaa-authen-radius_packetfence] authentication-mode radius
[AC-aaa-authen-radius_packetfence] quit
[AC-aaa] accounting-scheme radius_packetfence
[AC-aaa-accounting-radius_packetfence] accounting-mode radius
[AC-aaa-accounting-radius_packetfence] quit
```

```
[AC-aaa] domain your.domain.com
[AC-aaa-domain-your.domain.com] authentication-scheme radius_packetfence
```

```
[AC-aaa-domain-your.domain.com] accounting-scheme radius_packetfence
[AC-aaa-domain-your.domain.com] radius-server radius_packetfence
[AC-aaa-domain-your.domain.com] quit
[AC-aaa] quit
```

## Create an Secure dot1x SSID

Activate the dotx globally:

```
<AC>system-view
[AC] dot1x enable
```

Create your secure dot1x ssid:

Configure WLAN-ESS 0 interfaces:

```
[AC] interface Wlan-Ess 0
[AC-Wlan-Ess0] port hybrid untagged vlan 145 to 146
[AC-Wlan-Ess0] dot1x enable
[AC-Wlan-Ess0] dot1x authentication-method eap
[AC-Wlan-Ess0] permit-domain name your.domain.com
[AC-Wlan-Ess0] force-domain name your.domain.com
[AC-Wlan-Ess0] default-domain your.domain.com
[AC-Wlan-Ess0] quit
```

## Configure AP parameters:

Configure radios for APs:

```
[AC] wlan
[AC-wlan-view] wmm-profile name huawei-ap
[AC-wlan-wmm-prof-huawei-ap] quit
[AC-wlan-view] radio-profile name huawei-ap
[AC-wlan-radio-prof-huawei-ap] radio-type 80211gn
[AC-wlan-radio-prof-huawei-ap] wmm-profile name huawei-ap
[AC-wlan-radio-prof-huawei-ap] quit
[AC-wlan-view] ap 1 radio 0
[AC-wlan-radio-1/0] radio-profile name huawei-ap
Warning: Modify the Radio type may cause some parameters of Radio resume default value, are you sure to continue?[Y/N]: y
[AC-wlan-radio-1/0] quit
```

Configure a security profile named huawei-ap. Set the security policy to WPA authentication, authentication method to 802.1X+PEAP, and encryption mode to CCMP:

```
[AC-wlan-view] security-profile name huawei-ap-wpa2
[AC-wlan-sec-prof-huawei-ap-wpa2] security-policy wpa2
[AC-wlan-sec-prof-huawei-ap-wpa2] wpa-wpa2 authentication-method dot1x
encryption-method ccmp
[AC-wlan-sec-prof-huawei-ap-wpa2] quit
```

Configure a traffic profile:

```
[AC-wlan-view] traffic-profile name huawei-ap
[AC-wlan-wmm-traffic-huawei-ap] quit
```

Configure service sets for APs, and set the data forwarding mode to direct forwarding:

The direct forwarding mode is used by default.

```
[AC-wlan-view] service-set name PacketFence-dot1x
[AC-wlan-service-set-PacketFence-dot1x] ssid PacketFence-Secure
[AC-wlan-service-set-PacketFence-dot1x] wlan-ess 0
[AC-wlan-service-set-PacketFence-dot1x] service-vlan 1
[AC-wlan-service-set-PacketFence-dot1x] security-profile name huawei-ap-wpa2
[AC-wlan-service-set-PacketFence-dot1x] traffic-profile name huawei-ap
[AC-wlan-service-set-PacketFence-dot1x] forward-mode tunnel
[AC-wlan-service-set-PacketFence-dot1x] quit
```

Configure VAPs and deliver configurations to the APs:

```
[AC-wlan-view] ap 1 radio 0
[AC-wlan-radio-1/0] service-set name PacketFence-dot1x
[AC-wlan-radio-1/0] quit
[AC-wlan-view] commit ap 1
```

## Create your Open ssid

Activate the mac-auth globally:

```
<AC>system-view
[AC] mac-authen
[AC] mac-authen username macaddress format with-hyphen
[AC] mac-authen domain your.domain.com
```

Create your Open ssid:

Configure WLAN-ESS 1 interfaces:

```
[AC] interface Wlan-Ess 1
[AC-Wlan-Ess1] port hybrid untagged vlan 145 to 146
[AC-Wlan-Ess1] mac-authen
[AC-Wlan-Ess1] mac-authen username macaddress format without-hyphen
[AC-Wlan-Ess1] permit-domain name your.domain.com
[AC-Wlan-Ess1] force-domain name your.domain.com
[AC-Wlan-Ess1] default-domain your.domain.com
[AC-Wlan-Ess1] quit
```

Configure AP parameters:

Configure a security profile named huawei-ap-wep. Set the security policy to WEP authentication.

```
[AC]wlan
[AC-wlan-view] security-profile name huawei-ap-wep
[AC-wlan-sec-prof-huawei-ap-wep] security-policy wep
[AC-wlan-sec-prof-huawei-ap-wep] quit
```

Configure service sets for APs, and set the data forwarding mode to direct forwarding:

The direct forwarding mode is used by default.

```
[AC-wlan-view] service-set name PacketFence-WEP
[AC-wlan-service-set-PacketFence-WEP] ssid PacketFence-Open
[AC-wlan-service-set-PacketFence-WEP] wlan-ess 1
[AC-wlan-service-set-PacketFence-WEP] service-vlan 1
[AC-wlan-service-set-PacketFence-WEP] security-profile name huawei-ap-wep
[AC-wlan-service-set-PacketFence-WEP] traffic-profile name huawei-ap (already
created before)
[AC-wlan-service-set-PacketFence-WEP] forward-mode tunnel
[AC-wlan-service-set-PacketFence-WEP] quit
```

Configure VAPs and deliver configurations to the APs:

```
[AC-wlan-view] ap 1 radio 0
[AC-wlan-radio-1/0] service-set name PacketFence-WEP
[AC-wlan-radio-1/0] quit
[AC-wlan-view] commit ap 1
```

## 6.19. Meraki

To add the AP on PacketFence use the internal IP of the AP.

The 'Disconnect port' field must be set to '1700'.



## 6.19.1. WebAuth

In this section, we will cover the configuration of the Meraki controller to use Web authentication.

### NOTE

While using the WebAuth mode on the Meraki controller, you need to use "Role mapping by Switch Role" and "Role by Web Auth URL" in the tab 'Roles' from the switch configuration.

Configure your SSID as shown below:

#### Network access

Association requirements

- Open (no encryption)  
Any user can associate
- Pre-shared key with **WPA2**  
Users must enter a passphrase to associate
- MAC-based access control (no encryption)  
RADIUS server is queried at association time
- WPA2-Enterprise with **Meraki authentication**  
User credentials are validated with 802.1X at association time

Splash page

- None (direct access)  
Users can access the network as soon as they associate
- Click-through  
Users must view and acknowledge your splash page before being allowed on the network
- Sign-on with **Meraki authentication**  
Users must enter a username and password before being allowed on the network
- Sign-on with SMS Authentication  
Users enter a mobile phone number and receive an authorization code via SMS. After a trial period of 25 texts, you will need to connect with your Twilio account on the [Network-wide settings](#) page.
- Billing (paid access)  
Users choose from various pay-for-access options, or an optional free tier
- Systems Manager Sentry enrollment ⓘ  
Only devices with Systems Manager can access this network
- Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) Authentication ⓘ  
Users are redirected to the Cisco ISE web portal for device posturing and guest access

RADIUS servers

| # | Host        | Port | Secret | Actions |
|---|-------------|------|--------|---------|
| 1 | 192.168.1.5 | 1812 | *****  |         |

RADIUS testing ⓘ **RADIUS testing disabled**

RADIUS CoA support ⓘ **RADIUS CoA enabled**

RADIUS accounting **RADIUS accounting is enabled**

RADIUS accounting servers

| # | Host        | Port | Secret | Actions |
|---|-------------|------|--------|---------|
| 1 | 192.168.1.5 | 1813 | *****  |         |

[Add a server](#)

RADIUS attribute specifying group policy name **Airespace-ACL-Name** ⓘ

Assign group policies by device type  Disabled: do not assign group policies automatically

Walled garden  Walled garden is disabled

---

**Addressing and traffic**

Client IP assignment

- NAT mode: Use Meraki DHCP  
Clients receive IP addresses in an isolated 10.0.0.0/8 network. Clients cannot communicate with each other, but they may communicate with devices on the wired LAN if the [SSID firewall settings](#) permit.
- Bridge mode: Make clients part of the LAN  
Meraki devices operate transparently (no NAT or DHCP). Clients receive DHCP leases from the LAN or use static IPs. Use this for shared printers, file sharing, and wireless cameras.
- Layer 3 roaming  
Clients receive DHCP leases from the LAN or use static IPs as in bridge mode. If they roam between APs their traffic will be forwarded to an AP on the same subnet they originally joined, so they will keep the same IP address.
- Layer 3 roaming with a concentrator  
Clients are tunneled to a specified VLAN at the concentrator. They will keep the same IP address when roaming between APs.
- VPN: tunnel data to a concentrator  
Meraki devices send traffic over a secure tunnel to an MX or VM concentrator.

VLAN tagging  Don't use VLAN tagging

RADIUS override  Ignore VLAN attribute in RADIUS responses

Content filtering  Don't filter content

Bonjour forwarding  Disable Bonjour Forwarding

---

**Wireless options**

Band selection

- Dual band operation (2.4 GHz and 5 GHz)
- 5 GHz band only  
5 GHz has more capacity and less interference than 2.4 GHz, but legacy clients are not capable of using it.
- Dual band operation with Band Steering  
Band Steering detects clients capable of 5 GHz operation and steers them to that frequency, while leaving 2.4 GHz available for legacy clients.

Minimum bitrate (Mbps)

Lower Density Higher Density

1 2 5.5 6 9 11.22 18 24 36 48 54

Maximum device compatibility

**NOTE**


It is mandatory that you use the Airespace-ACL-Name as "RADIUS attribute specifying group policy name".

The switch module to use for this configuration is "Meraki cloud controller V2".

Next, configure the roles for the devices on your network. Go in 'Network-wide→Group policies', then you will be able to create policies that can be configured as roles in the switch configuration of PacketFence. Creation of the policy **Guest**:

Name

Schedule ?

Bandwidth  2 Mbps  [details](#)

Firewall and traffic shaping ?

Layer 3 firewall

| # | Policy | Protocol | Destination | Port | Comment      | Actions |
|---|--------|----------|-------------|------|--------------|---------|
|   | Allow  | Any      | Any         | Any  | Default rule |         |

[Add a firewall rule](#)

Layer 7 firewall

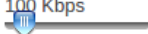
| # | Policy | Application        | Actions   |
|---|--------|--------------------|---|
| 1 | Deny   | Peer-to-peer (P2P) | All Peer-to-peer (P2P) <input type="button" value="↕ X"/> |
| 2 | Deny   | Video & music      | All Video & music <input type="button" value="↕ X"/>      |

[Add a layer 7 firewall rule](#)

Traffic shaping 1

Definition  
This rule will be enforced on traffic matching any of these expressions.

Per-client bandwidth limit

100 Kbps  [details](#)

PCP / DSCP tagging  /

[Add a new shaping rule](#)

VLAN

Splash

Bonjour forwarding ?  
Bridge mode SSIDs only

There are no Bonjour forwarding rules on this network.  
[Add a Bonjour forwarding rule](#)

[Affecting 0 clients.](#)

Your configuration for the tab "Roles" in PacketFence will look like the following:

Status Reports Auditing Nodes Users Configuration
API dashboard admin

---

Filter

**Policies and Access Control**

- Roles
- Domains
  - Active Directory
  - Domains
- Realms
- Authentication Sources
- Network Devices
  - Switches
  - Switch Groups
- Connection Profiles
- Compliance**
- Integration**
- Advanced Access Configuration**
- Network Configuration**
- System Configuration**

### Switch 192.168.0.1

✕

Definition
Roles
Inline
RADIUS
SNMP
CLI
Web Services

Advanced

#### Role mapping by VLAN ID

Role by VLAN ID

#### Role mapping by Switch Role

Role by Switch Role

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| registration | <input type="text"/>                            |
| isolation    | <input type="text"/>                            |
| macDetection | <input type="text"/>                            |
| inline       | <input type="text" value="inline"/>             |
| REJECT       | <input type="text"/>                            |
| default      | <input type="text" value="Authorized devices"/> |
| gaming       | <input type="text"/>                            |
| guest        | <input type="text" value="Guest"/>              |
| voice        | <input type="text" value="voice"/>              |

#### Role mapping by Access List

Role by Access List

#### Role mapping by Web Auth URL

Role by Web Auth URL

Save
Reset
Clone
Delete

Status Reports Auditing Nodes Users Configuration
API dashboard admin

---

Filter

**Policies and Access Control**

- Roles
- Domains
  - Active Directory
  - Domains
- Realms
- Authentication Sources
- Network Devices
  - Switches
  - Switch Groups
- Connection Profiles
- Compliance**
- Integration**
- Advanced Access Configuration**
- Network Configuration**
- System Configuration**

### Switch 192.168.0.1

✕

Definition
Roles
Inline
RADIUS
SNMP
CLI
Web Services

Advanced

Role mapping by VLAN ID

Role by VLAN ID

Role mapping by Switch Role

Role by Switch Role

Role mapping by Access List

Role by Access List

Role mapping by Web Auth URL

Role by Web Auth URL

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| registration | <input type="text" value="http://172.20.20.66/Meraki::MR_v2"/> |
| isolation    | <input type="text"/>   |
| macDetection | <input type="text"/>   |
| inline       | <input type="text"/>   |
| REJECT       | <input type="text"/>   |
| default      | <input type="text"/>   |
| gaming       | <input type="text"/>   |
| guest        | <input type="text"/>   |
| voice        | <input type="text"/>   |

Save
Reset
Clone
Delete

URL in registration field should be in the form: 'http://<your\_captive\_portal\_ip>/Meraki::MR\_v2'

## 6.19.2. VLAN enforcement

This section will cover how to configure the Meraki WiFi controller to use with VLAN enforcement, use the configuration in the section [WebAuth](#) for the SSID.

In the configuration of PacketFence, use "Role by VLAN ID" and fill your VLANs matching roles.

Status Reports Auditing Nodes Users Configuration
API dashboard admin

---

Filter

**Policies and Access Control**

- Roles
- Domains
  - Active Directory Domains
  - Realms
- Authentication Sources
- Network Devices
  - Switches
  - Switch Groups
- Connection Profiles
- Compliance**
- Integration**
- Advanced Access Configuration**
- Network Configuration**
- System Configuration**

### Switch 192.168.0.1

✕

Definition
Roles
Inline
RADIUS
SNMP
CLI
Web Services

Advanced

#### Role mapping by VLAN ID

Role by VLAN ID

|              |    |  |
|--------------|----|--|
| registration | 2  |  |
| isolation    | 3  |  |
| macDetection | 4  |  |
| inline       | 6  |  |
| REJECT       | -1 |  |
| default      | 10 |  |
| gaming       |    |  |
| guest        |    |  |
| voice        | 5  |  |

#### Role mapping by Switch Role

Role by Switch Role

#### Role mapping by Access List

Role by Access List

#### Role mapping by Web Auth URL

Role by Web Auth URL

Save
Reset
Clone
Delete

### 6.19.3. Dynamic PSK (Pre-Shared Key)

This section will cover how to configure the Meraki WiFi controller to use with Dynamic PSK with PacketFence.

You will be able to attribute one PSK per user to use on every device they want. There is a common key to connect to a given PSK secured SSID to register and you will have an option to provision your device with that configuration on Windows, Apple and Android devices.

Create the SSID

SSID:

---

Network access

Association requirements

- Open (no encryption)  
Any user can associate
- Pre-shared key (PSK)  
Users must enter a passphrase to associate
- MAC-based access control (no encryption)  
RADIUS server is queried at association time
- Enterprise with   
User credentials are validated with 802.1X at association time
- Identity PSK with RADIUS  
RADIUS server is queried at association time to obtain a passphrase for a device based on its MAC address

WPA encryption mode

802.11w

---

Splash page

- None (direct access)  
Users can access the network as soon as they associate
- Click-through  
Users must view and acknowledge your splash page before being allowed on the network
- Sponsored guest login  
Guests must enter a valid sponsor email and own email address before being allowed on the network
- Sign-on with   
Users must enter a username and password before being allowed on the network
- Sign-on with SMS Authentication  
Users enter a mobile phone number and receive an authorization code via SMS.  
After a trial period of 25 texts, you will need to connect with your Twilio account on the [Network-wide settings](#) page.
- Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) Authentication   
Users are redirected to the Cisco ISE web portal for device posturing and guest access
- Systems Manager Sentry enrollment   
Only devices with Systems Manager can access this network
- Billing (paid access)   
Users choose from various pay-for-access options, or an optional free tier



After a trial period of 25 texts, you will need to connect with your Twilio account on the [Network-wide settings](#) p

- Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) Authentication ⓘ  
Users are redirected to the Cisco ISE web portal for device posturing and guest access
- Systems Manager Sentry enrollment ⓘ  
Only devices with Systems Manager can access this network
- Billing (paid access) ⓘ  
Users choose from various pay-for-access options, or an optional free tier

**RADIUS servers**

| # | Host        | Port | Secret | Actions  |
|---|-------------|------|--------|----------|
| 1 | 192.168.1.5 | 1812 | .....  | ⊕ × Test |

[Add a server](#)

**RADIUS testing** ⓘ RADIUS testing disabled ▾

**RADIUS CoA support** ⓘ RADIUS CoA enabled ▾

**RADIUS attribute specifying group policy name** Filter-Id ▾ ⓘ

---

**RADIUS accounting** RADIUS accounting is disabled ▾

**RADIUS proxy** ⓘ Do not use Meraki proxy ▾

---

**Assign group policies by device type** ⓘ Disabled: do not assign group policies automatically ▾

---

**Walled garden** ⓘ Walled garden is disabled ▾

## Provisioner configuration

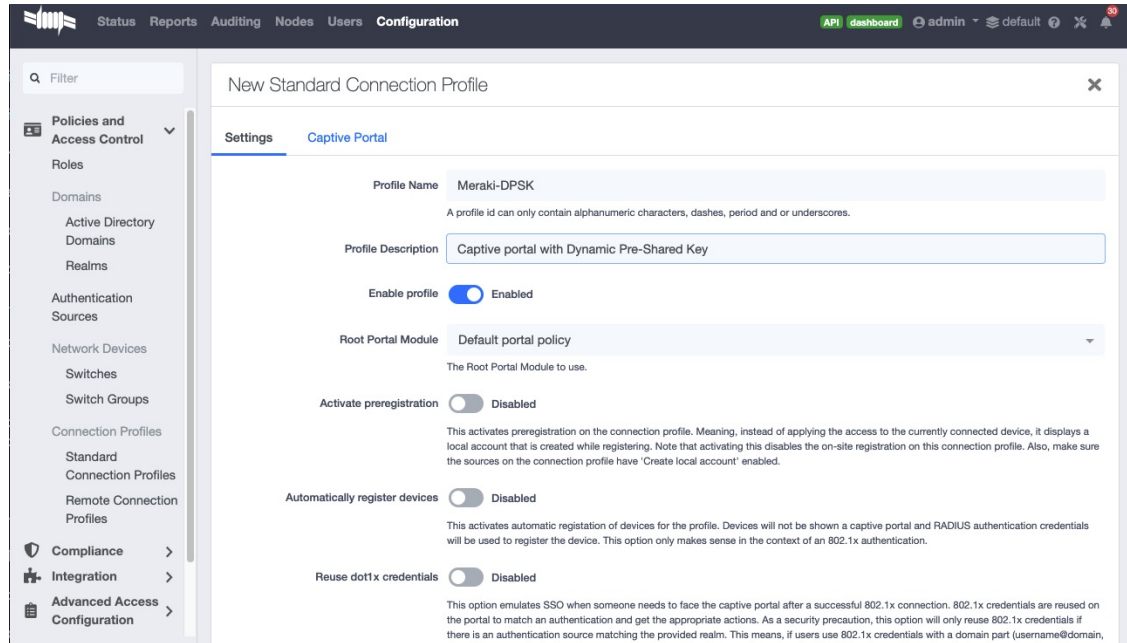
Go to Configuration > Advanced Access Configuration > Provisioner > New provisioner > DPSK

The screenshot shows the 'New Provisioner' configuration page in the Meraki dashboard. The page is titled 'New Provisioner DPSK' and includes a sidebar with navigation options like Policies and Access Control, Compliance, Integration, and Advanced Access Configuration. The main configuration area includes the following fields and options:

- Provisioning ID:** Meraki-DPSK
- Description:** SSID Auto-configuration
- Enforce:** Enabled (toggle)
- Auto register:** Disabled (toggle)
- Apply role:** Disabled (toggle)
- Role to apply:** Select option (dropdown)
- Roles:** User (dropdown)
- SSID:** Meraki-DPSK
- OS:** Windows OS, iOS, Android OS (checkboxes)

## Connection profile configuration

Go to Configuration > Policies and Access Control > Connection Profiles > New Connection Profile



**New Standard Connection Profile**

Settings **Captive Portal**

Profile Name: Meraki-DPSK  
A profile id can only contain alphanumeric characters, dashes, period and or underscores.

Profile Description: Captive portal with Dynamic Pre-Shared Key

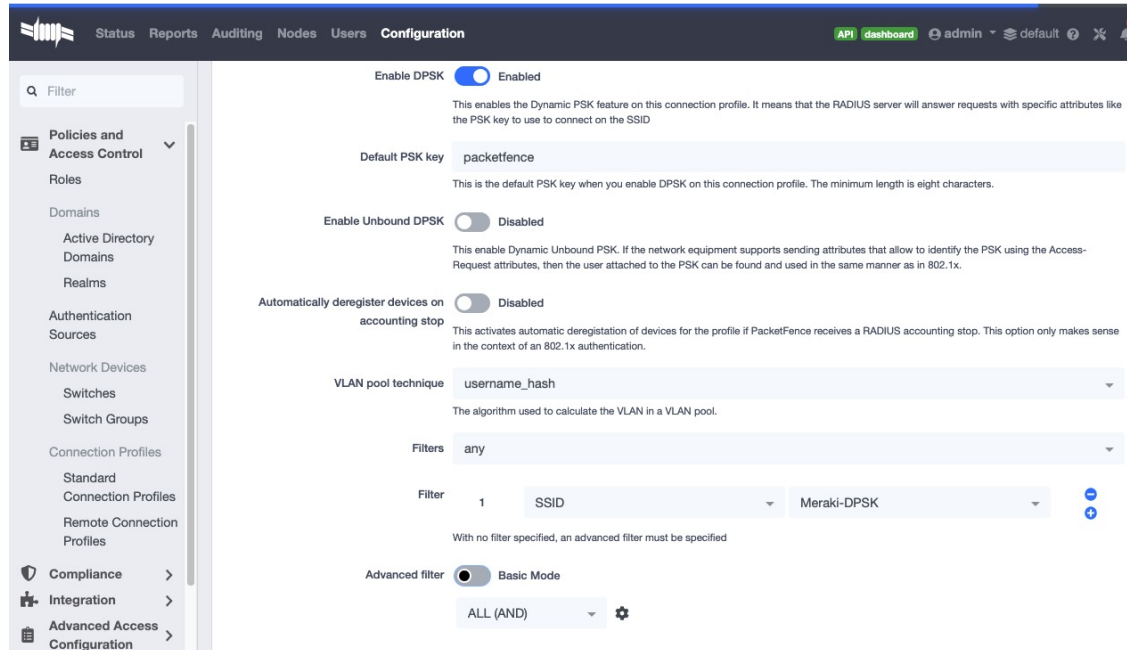
Enable profile:  Enabled

Root Portal Module: Default portal policy  
The Root Portal Module to use.

Activate preregistration:  Disabled  
This activates preregistration on the connection profile. Meaning, instead of applying the access to the currently connected device, it displays a local account that is created while registering. Note that activating this disables the on-site registration on this connection profile. Also, make sure the sources on the connection profile have 'Create local account' enabled.

Automatically register devices:  Disabled  
This activates automatic registration of devices for the profile. Devices will not be shown a captive portal and RADIUS authentication credentials will be used to register the device. This option only makes sense in the context of an 802.1x authentication.

Reuse doffx credentials:  Disabled  
This option emulates SSO when someone needs to face the captive portal after a successful 802.1x connection. 802.1x credentials are reused on the portal to match an authentication and get the appropriate actions. As a security precaution, this option will only reuse 802.1x credentials if there is an authentication source matching the provided realm. This means, if users use 802.1x credentials with a domain part (username@domain,



Enable DPSK:  Enabled  
This enables the Dynamic PSK feature on this connection profile. It means that the RADIUS server will answer requests with specific attributes like the PSK key to use to connect on the SSID

Default PSK key: packetfence  
This is the default PSK key when you enable DPSK on this connection profile. The minimum length is eight characters.

Enable Unbound DPSK:  Disabled  
This enable Dynamic Unbound PSK. If the network equipment supports sending attributes that allow to identify the PSK using the Access-Request attributes, then the user attached to the PSK can be found and used in the same manner as in 802.1x.

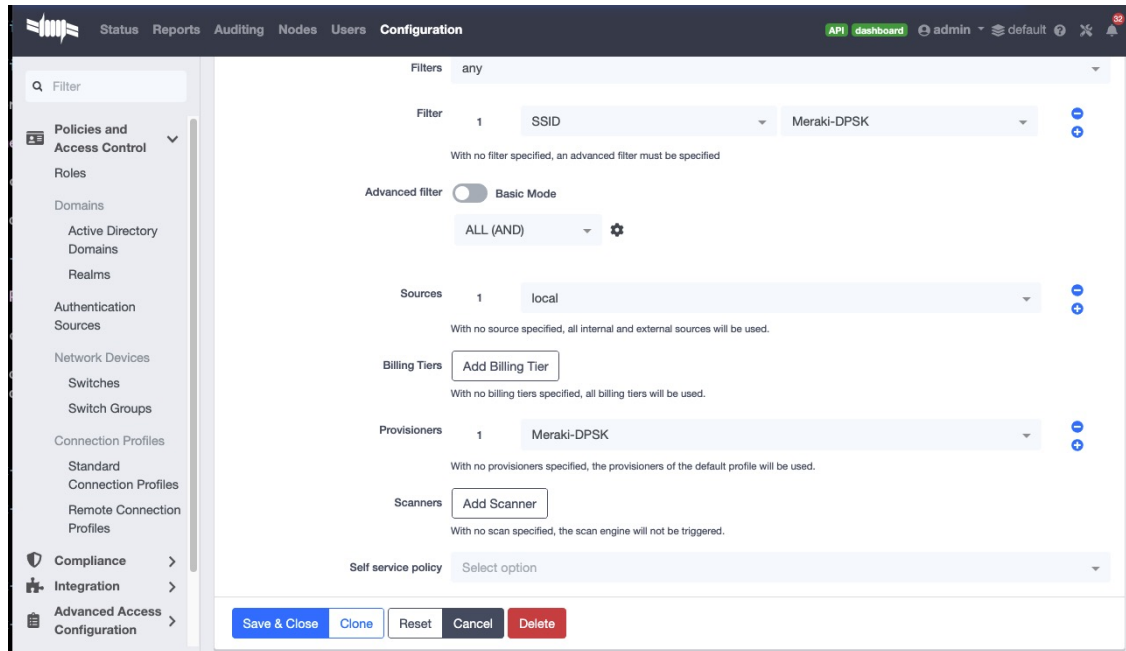
Automatically deregister devices on accounting stop:  Disabled  
This activates automatic deregistration of devices for the profile if PacketFence receives a RADIUS accounting stop. This option only makes sense in the context of an 802.1x authentication.

VLAN pool technique: username\_hash  
The algorithm used to calculate the VLAN in a VLAN pool.

Filters: any

Filter 1: SSID Meraki-DPSK  
With no filter specified, an advanced filter must be specified

Advanced filter:  Basic Mode  
ALL (AND)



## Switch MS220-8

**NOTE** You should already have one port setup as Uplink, using a mode trunk, with at least your Registration and Production VLAN allowed on it.

The Meraki switch offer configuration for VLAN enforcement only.

You will need to access the Meraki dashboard to configure your switch. When you reach it you will need first to create a policy. You can create a "MAC authentication bypass" or a "802.1X" policy. Depending if you want to authenticate user via dot1x or MAB. You cannot combine both neither use a fallback mode on the same port, each port with a policy applied will be exclusive to MAB or dot1x.

To access the policy creation go to 'Switch→Access policies' in the Meraki dashboard menu. From there create a new policy, use the example below to create your policy.

**Access policies**

Name: Redirect

RADIUS servers

| # | Host        | Port | Secret | Actions  |
|---|-------------|------|--------|----------|
| 1 | 192.168.1.5 | 1812 | *****  | ⊕ × Test |

[Add a server](#)

RADIUS testing: RADIUS testing enabled

Access policy type: 802.1X

Guest VLAN: Disabled

Voice VLAN clients: Require authentication

Switch ports: There is currently 1 Switch port using this policy

[Remove this access policy](#)

---

Name: Redirect-MAB

RADIUS servers

| # | Host        | Port | Secret | Actions  |
|---|-------------|------|--------|----------|
| 1 | 192.168.1.5 | 1812 | *****  | ⊕ × Test |

[Add a server](#)

RADIUS testing: RADIUS testing enabled

Access policy type: MAC authentication bypass

Guest VLAN: Disabled

Voice VLAN clients: Require authentication

Switch ports: There is currently 1 Switch port using this policy

[Remove this access policy](#)

You now need to apply one of your policies to ports. To do so, go to 'Switch→Switch ports' and chose your options. To add a policy you created earlier, select it in the drop down list in **Access policy**. You need to configure the port in "mode access", the default access VLAN is not important if your VLANs are properly configured on PacketFence.

## Update 1 port

×

---

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| Switch ports:  | 88:15:44:04:bd:56/2  |
| Name:          | <input style="width: 90%;" type="text"/> <span style="float: right; font-size: 18px;">📄</span> |
| Tags:          | <input type="text" value="eg. 'email-alerts phone'"/>  |
| Enabled:       | <input type="text" value="enabled"/> ▼   |
| RSTP:          | <input type="text" value="enabled"/> ▼   |
| STP guard:     | <input type="text" value="disabled"/> ▼  |
| PoE:           | <input type="text" value="enabled"/> ▼   |
| Link: ⓘ        | <input type="text" value="auto"/> ▼  |
| Port schedule: | <input type="text" value="Unscheduled"/> ▼   |
| Isolation:     | <input type="text" value="disabled"/> ▼  |
| Type:          | <input type="text" value="access"/> ▼  |
| Access policy: | <input type="text" value="Redirect"/> ▼  |
| VLAN:          | <input style="background-color: #ffffcc;" type="text" value="2"/>                              |
| Voice VLAN: ⓘ  | <input style="background-color: #ffffcc;" type="text" value="4"/>                              |

Cancel
Update 1 port

### RADSEC

It is possible to use RADSEC between Meraki and PacketFence in order to perform RADIUS over TCP and encrypted using TLS. Before performing the steps outlined in this section, make sure you have a working SSID using normal unencrypted RADIUS by following the steps in the sections above

Then, in order to enable RADSEC, go in your SSID configuration and under 'RADIUS proxy', select 'Use Meraki proxy' and save the settings.

After saving, check the RADSEC checkbox and save your settings.

Now, on your PacketFence server, you must add the Meraki CA root to the trusted Certificate Authorities of FreeRADIUS when performing RADSEC. You should download the Meraki CA certificate from here <http://changeme.com/meraki-root.crt> and append it to the content of /usr/local/pf/raddb/certs/ca.pem on your PacketFence server.

Next, restart radiusd to reload the CA certificates using:

```
# /usr/local/pf/bin/pfcmd service radiusd restart
```

**NOTE**

RADSEC is done over port 2083 so make sure your server is available via a public IP address for this port and allows connections from your Meraki cloud controller. Refer to the Meraki documentation for details.

## 6.20. Mikrotik

PacketFence supports MikroTik's RouterOS to provide wireless 802.1X (WPA2-Enterprise and MAC-based authentication) as well as wired 802.1X (EAPoL (Extensible Authentication Protocol over LAN)).

MikroTik has supported wireless 802.1X RADIUS disconnect for 2+ years, but this is not available for wired 802.1X (dot1x).

This configuration has been tested on a variety of MikroTik devices, including RB433AH, hAP ac, hAP ac lite, RB1100, RB3011 and various CCR devices. MikroTik provide free software updates ('/system package update install' and then '/sys routerboard upgrade' after booting new RouterOS).

Default MikroTik de-auth method has been changed to RADIUS, instead of SSH. Change 'my \$default = \$SNMP::RADIUS;' back to 'my \$default = \$SNMP::SSH;' if you want to continue using SSH as the de-authentication method.

EAPoL (802.1X) wired authentication has been available since v6.46 (Dec 2019) with MAB fallback being stable in v6.48.3.

PS: Don't forget to use the pf account to ssh on the Access Point, to receive the ssh key, if you switch back to using SSH.

### WPA2-EAP (WPA2 Enterprise) 802.1X SSID with MAC-based authentication on WPA2-PSK SSID

In this example the 2.4 and 5 GHz radios are configured to provide wireless 802.1X with a virtual AP being added to provide MAC-based authentication on a WPA2-PSK SSID where the password is disclosed as part of the SSID. Although the Pre-Shared Key (PSK) is published each wireless client's connection would still be encrypted with a dynamically generated key.

First we create the SSIDs and virtual AP for the second SSID:

```

/interface wireless security-profiles
  add authentication-types=wpa2-eap disable-pmkid=yes interim-update=15m
management-protection=allowed mode=dynamic-keys name=radius-eap \
  radius-eap-accounting=yes supplicant-identity=""
  add authentication-types=wpa2-psk disable-pmkid=yes eap-methods="" interim-
update=15m management-protection=allowed mode=dynamic-keys name=\
  radius-mac radius-mac-accounting=yes radius-mac-authentication=yes
supplicant-identity="" wpa2-pre-shared-key="internet"
/interface wireless
  set [ find default-name=wlan1 ] band=2ghz-b/g/n channel-width=20mhz
country="south africa" disabled=no frequency=auto mode=ap-bridge name=\
  "wlan1 - 2.4 GHz - ACME WiFi" security-profile=radius-eap skip-dfs-
channels=all ssid="ACME WiFi" station-roaming=enabled vlan-id=3999 \
  vlan-mode=use-tag wireless-protocol=802.11 wps-mode=disabled
  add disabled=no master-interface="wlan1 - 2.4 GHz - ACME WiFi" multicast-
helper=full name="wlan1 - 2.4 GHz - ACME Guest" \
  security-profile=radius-mac ssid="ACME Guest (pw: internet)" station-
roaming=enabled vlan-id=3999 vlan-mode=use-tag wps-mode=disabled
  set [ find default-name=wlan2 ] band=5ghz-a/n/ac channel-width=20/40/80mhz-
Ceee country="south africa" disabled=no frequency=auto mode=ap-bridge \
  name="wlan2 - 5 GHz - ACME WiFi" security-profile=radius-eap skip-dfs-
channels=all ssid="ACME WiFi" station-roaming=enabled vlan-id=3999 \
  vlan-mode=use-tag wireless-protocol=802.11 wps-mode=disabled
  add disabled=no master-interface="wlan2 - 5 GHz - ACME WiFi" multicast-
helper=full name="wlan2 - 5 GHz - ACME Guest" \
  security-profile=radius-mac ssid="ACME Guest (pw: internet)" station-
roaming=enabled vlan-id=3999 vlan-mode=use-tag wps-mode=disabled
PS: VLAN 3999 is purposefully bogus, to ensure no access without VLAN
assignment in the RADIUS response.

```

Next we create a VLAN filtering bridge:

```

/interface bridge
  add name=bridge vlan-filtering=yes
/interface bridge port
  add bridge=bridge interface="wlan1 - 2.4 GHz - ACME WiFi"
  add bridge=bridge interface="wlan2 - 5 GHz - ACME WiFi"
  add bridge=bridge interface="wlan1 - 2.4 GHz - ACME Guest"
  add bridge=bridge interface="wlan2 - 5 GHz - ACME Guest"
/interface bridge vlan
  add bridge=bridge tagged="bridge,wlan1 - 2.4 GHz - ACME WiFi,wlan2 - 5 GHz -
ACME WiFi,wlan1 - 2.4 GHz - ACME Guest,wlan2 - 5 GHz - ACME Guest" vlan-ids=52
  add bridge=bridge tagged="bridge,wlan1 - 2.4 GHz - ACME WiFi,wlan2 - 5 GHz -
ACME WiFi,wlan1 - 2.4 GHz - ACME Guest,wlan2 - 5 GHz - ACME Guest" vlan-ids=666
  add bridge=bridge tagged="bridge,wlan1 - 2.4 GHz - ACME WiFi,wlan2 - 5 GHz -
ACME WiFi,wlan1 - 2.4 GHz - ACME Guest,wlan2 - 5 GHz - ACME Guest" vlan-ids=667

```

Next we create the VLANs and assign IPs:

```
/interface vlan
  add comment="Guest WiFi:" interface=bridge name=vlan52 vlan-id=52
  add comment="PacketFence - Registration:" interface=bridge name=vlan666 vlan-
id=666
  add comment="PacketFence - Isolation:" interface=bridge name=vlan667 vlan-
id=667
/ip address
  add address=172.16.20.1/24 interface=bridge
  add address=10.239.239.1/24 interface=vlan52
  add address=192.168.10.225/28 interface=vlan666
  add address=192.168.10.241/28 interface=vlan667
PS: 172.16.20.1 is essentially assigned to VLAN 1 (untagged)
```

Last settings on the MikroTik defines PacketFence as the RADIUS server and filters traffic on Guest, Registration and Isolation networks:

```
/radius
  add address=172.16.5.17 comment=packetfence: secret=useStrongerSecret
service=wireless src-address=172.16.20.1 timeout=1s
/radius incoming
  set accept=yes
/ip dhcp-relay
  add dhcp-server=172.31.31.1 disabled=no interface=vlan666 local-
address=192.168.10.225 add-relay-info=yes name="PacketFence - Registration"
  add dhcp-server=172.31.31.129 disabled=no interface=vlan667 local-
address=192.168.10.241 add-relay-info=yes name="PacketFence - Isolation"
/ip firewall address-list
  add address=10.0.0.0/8 list=local
  add address=172.16.0.0/12 list=local
  add address=192.168.0.0/16 list=local
/ip firewall filter
  add action=reject chain=forward comment="Limit WiFi - Guest:" dst-
address=!41.1.1.1 dst-address-list=local in-interface=vlan52
  add action=reject chain=forward comment="Limit PacketFence - Registration:"
dst-address=!172.31.31.1 in-interface=vlan666
  add action=reject chain=forward comment="Limit PacketFence - Isolation:" dst-
address=!172.31.31.129 in-interface=vlan667
PS: Use 'src-address' to originate requests from an IP other than the one
associated with the interface that routes towards PacketFence.
    172.31.31.1 is PacketFence's routed registration network IP and
    172.31.31.129 is the routed Isolation IP.
```

PacketFence switch configuration:



```

/usr/local/pf/conf/switches.conf
[default]
guestVlan=52
registrationVlan=666
isolationVlan=667
always_trigger=1
-
[group MikroTik]
description=Default MikroTik Settings
deauthMethod=RADIUS
type=Mikrotik
uplink_dynamic=0
useCoA=N
-
[100.127.255.10]
description=ACME - Home Office - Bar
group=MikroTik
radiusSecret=useStrongerSecret

```

### 6.20.1. Wired 802.1X with MAB (MAC authentication bypass)

MikroTik calls this dot1x and is documented in more detail here: <https://help.mikrotik.com/docs/display/ROS/Dot1X>

The configuration requires a VLAN filtering bridge with Spanning Tree Protocol enabled. New bridges by default have RSTP (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol) enabled, so you can follow similar steps as above for wireless 802.1X.

Set the PacketFence RADIUS server to be used for dot1x:

```

/radius
add address=172.16.5.17 comment=packetfence: secret=useStrongerSecret
service=dot1x src-address=172.16.20.1 timeout=1s

```

Add the ethernet ports to the bridge:

```

/interface bridge port
add bridge=bridge interface=ether2
add bridge=bridge interface=ether3
add bridge=bridge interface=ether4
add bridge=bridge interface=ether5
PS: We use ether1 as our uplink, so we exclude it from the bridge.

```

Lastly we enable 802.1X for those interfaces, with MAB fallback:

```

/interface dot1x server
  add auth-types=dot1x,mac-auth interface=ether2 interim-update=15m
  add auth-types=dot1x,mac-auth interface=ether3 interim-update=15m
  add auth-types=dot1x,mac-auth interface=ether4 interim-update=15m
  add auth-types=dot1x,mac-auth interface=ether5 interim-update=15m

```

## 6.20.2. Open SSID

In this setup we use the interface ether5 for the bridge (Trunk interface) and ether1 as the management interface.

Configure your access point with the following configuration:

```

/interface wireless
# managed by CAPsMAN
# channel: 5180/20-Ce/an(17dBm), SSID: OPEN, local forwarding
set [ find default-name=wlan1 ] band=5ghz-a/n channel-width=20/40mhz-Ce
disabled=no l2mtu=1600 mode=ap-bridge ssid=MikroTik-05A64D
/interface ethernet
set [ find default-name=ether1 ] name=ether1-gateway
set [ find default-name=ether2 ] name=ether2-master-local
set [ find default-name=ether3 ] master-port=ether2-master-local name=ether3-
slave-local
set [ find default-name=ether4 ] master-port=ether2-master-local name=ether4-
slave-local
set [ find default-name=ether5 ] name=ether5-master-local
/interface vlan
add interface=BR-CAPS l2mtu=1594 name=default vlan-id=1
add interface=BR-CAPS l2mtu=1594 name=isolation vlan-id=3
add interface=BR-CAPS l2mtu=1594 name=registration vlan-id=2
/caps-man datapath
add bridge=BR-CAPS client-to-client-forwarding=yes local-forwarding=yes
name=datapath1
/caps-man interface
#
add arp=enabled configuration.mode=ap configuration.ssid=OPEN
datapath=datapath1 disabled=no l2mtu=1600 mac-address=\
  D4:CA:6D:05:A6:4D master-interface=none mtu=1500 name=cap1 radio-
mac=D4:CA:6D:05:A6:4D
/caps-man aaa
set interim-update=5m
/caps-man access-list
add action=query-radius interface=cap1 radius-accounting=yes signal-range=-
120..120 time=0s-1d,sun,mon,tue,wed,thu,fri,sat
/caps-man manager
set enabled=yes
/interface bridge port

```

```

add bridge=bridge-local interface=ether2-master-local
add bridge=bridge-local interface=ether1-gateway
add bridge=BR-CAPS interface=ether5-master-local
/interface wireless cap
set bridge=BR-CAPS discovery-interfaces=BR-CAPS enabled=yes interfaces=wlan1
/ip accounting
set enabled=yes
/radius
add address=192.168.1.5 secret=useStrongerSecret service=wireless
/radius incoming
set accept=yes

```

### 6.20.3. Webauth

You can use webauth (external captive portal) on Mikrotik APs. In order to do so, you will have to activate the hotspot feature in the AP configuration as well as modify the redirection template so that it points to PacketFence.

First, you must establish an FTP connection to your access point and replace the content of `hotspot/login.html` with the following:

```

<html>
<head><title>...</title></head>
<body>
$(if chap-id)
<noscript>
<center><b>JavaScript required. Enable JavaScript to continue.</b></center>
</noscript>
$(endif)
<center>If you are not redirected in a few seconds, click 'continue' below<br>
<form name="redirect" action="http://192.168.1.5/Mikrotik" method="get">
  <input type="hidden" name="mac" value="$(mac)">
  <input type="hidden" name="ip" value="$(ip)">
  <input type="hidden" name="username" value="$(username)">
  <input type="hidden" name="link-login" value="$(link-login)">
  <input type="hidden" name="link-orig" value="$(link-orig)">
  <input type="hidden" name="error" value="$(error)">
  <input type="hidden" name="chap-id" value="$(chap-id)">
  <input type="hidden" name="chap-challenge" value="$(chap-challenge)">
  <input type="hidden" name="link-login-only" value="$(link-login-only)">
  <input type="hidden" name="link-orig-esc" value="$(link-orig-esc)">
  <input type="hidden" name="mac-esc" value="$(mac-esc)">
  <input type="hidden" name="ap-id" value="AP_IP_ADDRESS_HERE">
  <input type="submit" value="continue">
</form>
<script language="JavaScript">
<!--
  document.redirect.submit();

```

```
//-->
</script></center>
</body>
</html>
```

Next, in the `login.html` you have just uploaded, make sure you change `AP_IP_ADDRESS_HERE` by the management IP address of your access point and `192.168.1.5` by the IP address of your PacketFence captive portal.

Now, you must configure the hotspot feature on your AP. This configuration is done on top of an existing SSID you have previously configured which is on interface `wlan1`. Adjust the interface name if needed.

```
/ip hotspot
setup
```

```
hotspot interface: wlan1
```

```
local address of network: 10.5.50.1/24
masquerade network: yes
```

Set pool for HotSpot addresses

```
address pool of network: 10.5.50.2-10.5.50.254
```

Select hotspot SSL certificate

```
select certificate: none
```

Select SMTP server

```
ip address of smtp server: 0.0.0.0
```

Setup DNS configuration

```
dns servers: 8.8.8.8
```

DNS name of local hotspot server

```
dns name: myhotspot
```

Create local hotspot user

```
name of local hotspot user: admin
password for the user:
```

Next, you need to allow access to the PacketFence portal in the hotspot access list. Change **192.168.1.5** with the IP address you pointed to in [login.html](#)

```
/ip hotspot walled-garden
add dst-host=192.168.1.5
add src-address=192.168.1.5
```

```
/ip hotspot walled-garden ip
add action=accept disabled=no dst-host=192.168.1.5
add action=accept disabled=no src-address=192.168.1.5
```

Now, you will also need to configure the hotspot to point to your PacketFence RADIUS server:

```
/radius
add address=192.168.1.5 secret=useStrongerSecret service=hotspot
```

```
/ip hotspot profile
add hotspot-address=10.5.50.1 name=hsprof1 use-radius=yes
```

Next, you need to configure PacketFence to use webauth for this Access Point using the following [switches.conf](#) configuration. Change **AP\_IP\_ADDRESS\_HERE** by the IP address you've put in [login.html](#).

```
[AP_IP_ADDRESS_HERE]
VlanMap=Y
RoleMap=N
mode=production
ExternalPortalEnforcement=Y
type=Mikrotik
radiusSecret=useStrongerSecret
registrationVlan=-1
```

## 6.21. HP

## 6.21.1. ProCurve Controller MSM710

To be contributed...

## 6.22. Meru

### 6.22.1. Meru Controllers (MC)

In this section, we cover the basic configuration of the Meru wireless controller for PacketFence via the web GUI.

#### Disable PMK Caching

If you are running a WPA2 SSID, you may need to disable PMK caching in order to avoid deauthentication issues. This is true if you are running AP 300s using any 5.0 versions including 5.0-87, or any versions below 4.0-160.

Here are the commands to run to disable the PMK caching at the AP level. First, login the AP, and run this command to see which radios are broadcasting your SSID. `vap display`

Second, disable the PMK caching on those radios. `radio pmkid radio00 disable`

You can also add those commands to the AP bootscrip. Contact your Meru support representative for that part.

#### VLAN Definition

Here, we create our PacketFence VLANs for client use. Go to *Configuration* → *Wired* → *VLAN*, and select **Add**.

- VLAN Name is the human readable name (ie. RegistrationVLAN)
- Tag is the VLAN ID
- Fast Ethernet Interface Index refers to the controller's ethernet interface
- IP Address – An IP address for this controller on this VLAN
- Netmask – Network mask for this VLAN
- IP Address of the default gateway – Wired IP router for this VLAN
- Set the Override Default DHCP server flag to off
- Leave the DHCP server IP address and the DHCP relay Pass-Through to default

Click **OK** to add the VLAN.

#### AAA Authentication Server

Here, we create our PacketFence RADIUS server for use. Under *Configuration* → *Security* → *Radius*, select **Add**.

- Give the RADIUS Profile a name
- Write a description of the profile

- Give the RADIUS IP, RADIUS Secret and the RADIUS authentication port
- Select Colon for the MAC address delimiter
- Select MAC Address as the password type

Click **OK** to add the RADIUS profile.

### AAA Accounting Server

Here, we create our PacketFence RADIUS server for use. Under *Configuration* → *Security* → *Radius*, select **Add**.

- Give the RADIUS Profile a name
- Write a description of the profile
- Give the RADIUS IP, RADIUS Secret and the RADIUS accounting port
- Select Colon for the MAC address delimiter
- Select MAC Address as the password type

Click **OK** to add the RADIUS accounting profile.

### AAA Profiles – Open SSID

Here, we create our wireless security profiles for use. Under *Configuration* → *Security* → *Profile*, select **Add**.

- Give the security profile a name
- Select Clear as the L2 Modes Allowed
- Leave Data Encrypt empty
- Disable the Captive Portal
- Enable the Mac Filtering

Click **OK** to save the profile.

### MAC Filtering

When using the OpenSSID, you need to activate the mac filtering. Under *Configuration* → *Mac Filtering*:

- Set ACL Environment State to Permit list enabled
- Select your RADIUS profile

### AAA Profiles – Secure SSID

Here, we create our wireless security profiles for use. Under *Configuration* → *Security* → *Profile*, select **Add**.

- Give the security profile a name
- Select WPA2 as the L2 Modes Allowed
- Select CCMP-AES for Data Encrypt
- Select your PacketFence RADIUS Authentication Profile

- Disable the Captive Portal
- Enable the 802.1X network initiation
- Leave the Mac Filtering to off

Click **OK** to save the profile.

## WLAN SSIDs

Here, we create our SSID and tie it to a security profile. Under *Configuration* → *Wireless* → *ESS*, select **Add**.

- Give the ESS profile a name, and enable it
- Write an SSID name
- Select your security profile name previously created
- Select your PacketFence RADIUS Accounting Profile (if you want to do accounting)
- Enable the SSID Broadcast
- Make the new AP to join the ESS
- Set the tunnel interface type to RADIUS and Configured VLAN
- Select the registration VLAN for the VLAN Name

Click **OK** to create the SSID. Repeat those steps for the open and secure SSID by choosing the right security profile.

## WLAN SSIDs – Adding to access point

Here, we tie our SSIDs to access points. Under *Configuration* → *Wireless* → *ESS*, select the SSID you want to add to your aps. Then, select the **ESS-AP Table**, and click **Add**.

- Select the AP ID from the drop down list
- Click **OK** to associate the SSID with this AP

## Roles (Per-User Firewall)

Since PacketFence 3.3.0, we now support roles (per-user firewall rules) for the Meru hardware. To add firewall rules, go in *Configuration* → *QoS System Settings* → *QoS and Firewall Rules*. When you add a rule, you have to pay attention to two things:

- The rule is applied to the controller physical interface right away, so make sure you are not too wide on your ACL to lock you out!
- The rules are grouped using the Firewall Filter ID (We will use this ID for the roles)

So, since the matching is done using the Firewall Filter ID configuration field, your roles line in `switches.conf` would look like :

```
roles=Guests=1;Staff=2
```

**NOTE** | You need to have the **Per-User Firewall** license in order to benefit this feature.



## 6.23. Mojo Networks

PacketFence supports SSIDs configured with 802.1X and Web Authentication

### 6.23.1. Create the RADIUS Profile

First, create a RADIUS Profile for PacketFence.

- Login to the <https://dashboard.mojonetworks.com>
- Go to **Wireless Manager**
- Then click on *Configuration* → *Device Configuration* → *RADIUS Profiles* → *Add a RADIUS Profile*

```
Profile Name: NAME_OF_PROFILE_FOR_PACKETFENCE
IP Address: IP_OF_PACKETFENCE
Authentication Port: 1812
Accounting Port: 1813
Shared Secret: useStrongerSecret
```

Click on 'Save'.

### 6.23.2. Configure the SSID:

#### 802.1X Secure

- Login to the <https://dashboard.mojonetworks.com>
- Go to **Wireless Manager**
- Then click on *Configuration* → *Device Configuration* → *SSID Profiles* → *Add a new Profile* → *WLAN*

**NOTE** | (Leave the default configuration for the other settings)

```
Profile Name: PF-Secure-802.1X
SSID: PF-Secure
Security: WPA2; 802.1X
NAS ID: %m-%s
Dynamic VLANs: Enable VLAN Pool 1,2,4,5 (All VLANs that you will use)
Called-Station-ID: %m-%s
COA: Checked
```

#### RADIUS Authentication

Primary Authentication Server: PacketFence RADIUS profile created above.

#### RADIUS Accounting Server Details

Primary Accounting Server: PacketFence RADIUS profile created above.

Click the 'Save' button to save the PF-Secure SSID configuration.


## Web Authentication


To enable the external captive portal, go to the **SSID Profiles** page in **Device Configuration**. Add a new Wi-Fi profile with the following attributes:

Profile Name: Name of the new profile  
SSID: Name of your SSID  
Security: Open

### Security

Security Mode

Client Isolation  Enabling Client Isolation will void L2TIF functionality in Hotspot Settings of SSID Profile.

Secondary Authentication 

Network: VLAN ID for clients

### Network


VLAN ID

 Range: 0 to 4094. To map to untagged VLAN in switch port, enter VLAN ID = 0, irrespective of what VLAN ID is assigned to untagged VLAN in switch.

Captive Portal: select and fill in External Splash Page with RADIUS Authentication with “http://IP\_OR\_HOSTNAME\_OF\_PACKETFENCE/Mojo” and the RADIUS shared secret. Click on \*RADIUS Settings\* to select PacketFence as authentication and accounting server.

### External Splash Page with RADIUS Authentication

Splash Page URL

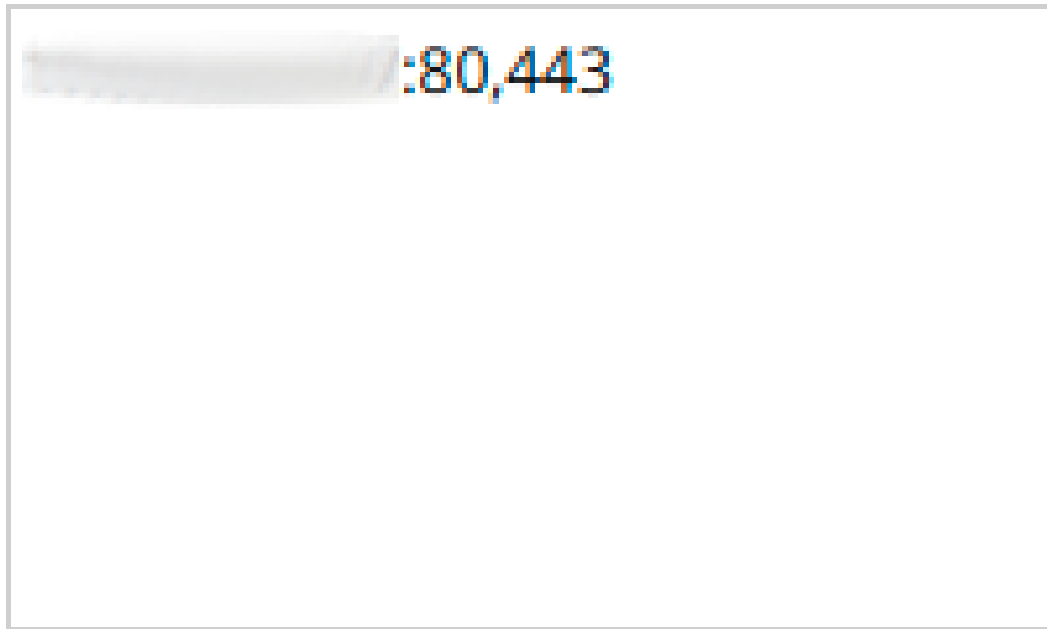
Shared Secret  

#### [RADIUS Settings](#)

 Define RADIUS server used to authenticate the user with the credentials entered on the splash page.

On the right, add the IP address or hostname of PacketFence to the Walled Garden Sites.

# Walled Garden Sites



[Add](#)      [Remove](#)

Save the newly created profile.

## 6.23.3. Broadcast the SSID on the Access Point:

- Go to *Configuration* → *Device Template* → *System Template*
- Then *Radio Settings* → *Define settings for model* → *Chose your AP model*
- Finally *Radio 1 - 2x2 b/g/n Configuration* → *Add SSID Profile* → *Select your SSID profile previously created(802.1X or Web authentication profile)* → *Ok*

Click the 'Save' button to broadcast the PF-Secure SSID.

## 6.23.4. Configure the Mojo Networks AP in PacketFence:

### 802.1X

Add a Switch with the IP address of the Access Point (AP) with the following configuration:

- Go to *Configuration* → *Network* → *Switches* → *Add switch to group* → *Default*

#### Definition:

IP Address/MAC Address/Range (CIDR): Local IP of the AP

Description: Mojo Networks Access Point

Type: Mojo Networks AP

```
Mode: Production
Switch Group: None
Deauthentication Method: RADIUS
Use CoA: Checked
```

```
Roles:
Role by VLAN ID: Checked
registration: 2
isolation: 3
guest: 5
default: 1
```

NOTE: Role by VLAN ID remain the only category checked.

```
Radius:
Secret Passphrase: useStrongerSecret
```

## Web Authentication

Add a switch with the IP address fo the Access Point (AP) with the following configuration:

- Go to *Configuration* → *Network* → *Switches* → *Add switch to group* → *Default*

```
Definition:
IP Address/MAC Address/Range (CIDR): Local IP of the AP
Description: Mojo Networks Access Point
Type: Mojo Networks AP
Mode: Production
Switch Group: None
Deauthentication Method: RADIUS
Use CoA: Checked
```

```
Roles:
Uncheck Role by VLAN ID
```

```
Radius:
Secret Passphrase: useStrongerSecret
```

Click the 'Save' button to save the AP configuration.

### IMPORTANT

Clone the newly created switch and enter **192.0.2.254** or the MAC

address of the AP.

## 6.24. Motorola

In order to have the Motorola RFS controller working with PacketFence, you need to define two Wireless LANs definition, one for the "public" network, and one for the "secure" network.

### 6.24.1. WiNG (Firmware >= 5.0)

#### AAA Policy (RADIUS server)

First, we need to build the AAA Policy. Under *Configuration* → *Wireless* → *AAA Policy*, click on the **Add** button at the bottom right. Configure the RADIUS profile like the following:

- Host: Choose IP Address in the drop down, and put the RADIUS server (PF) IP
- Insert a RADIUS secret passphrase
- Select "Through Wireless Controller" Request Mode

#### CAUTION

Since we are using RADIUS Dynamic Authorization, we need to enable the RADIUS accounting. Under the RADIUS accounting tab, click the Add button at the bottom right, and insert the proper values.

#### Open SSID

Under *Configuration* → *Wireless* → *Wireless LANs*, click on the **Add** button at the bottom right. Under Basic Configuration:

- Profile Name : Give a convenient name
- SSID: This is the ESSID name
- Ensure that the WLAN Status is set to enable
- Select Single VLAN as VLAN assignment technique
- Ensure that "Allow RADIUS Override" is selected

*Security configuration:*

- Select MAC as authentication type
- Select your AAA Policy previously created
- Ensure that you selected Open as the Encryption

*Accounting configuration:*

- Make sure you select "Enable RADIUS Accounting"
- Select the previously configured AAA Policy

*Advanced configuration:*

- Make sure you select RADIUS Dynamic Authorization

#### Secure SSID

Under *Configuration* → *Wireless* → *Wireless LANs*, click on the **Add** button at the bottom right. Under Basic Configuration:

- Profile Name : Give a convenient name
- SSID: This is the ESSID name
- Ensure that the WLAN Status is set to enable
- Select Single VLAN as VLAN assignment technique
- Ensure that "Allow RADIUS Override" is selected

*Security configuration:*

- Select EAP as authentication type
- Select your AAA Policy previously created
- Ensure that you selected WPA/WPA2-TKIP as the Encryption
- Unselect everything under Fast Roaming (Disable caching)

*Accounting configuration:*

- Make sure you select "Enable RADIUS Accounting"
- Select the previously configured AAA Policy

*Advanced configuration:*

- Make sure you select RADIUS Dynamic Authorization

## Profile (WLAN Mapping)

You have multiple options here. Either, you create a general AP profile, and you assign it to your Aps, or you modify the AP device configuration to map the WLAN to the radio interfaces. For the purpose of this document, we will modify the general profile. Under *Profiles* → *default-apXXX* (where XXX is your AP model), in *Interface* → *Radios*, edit the existing radios settings. Go to the **WLAN Mapping** tab, select the two SSIDs and click on the << button.

## Profile (Management)

Here, we can configure our SNMP community strings. Located in *Configuration* → *Management* → *Management Policy*. Again, you can modify the default one, or you can create a brand new Policy.

## VLANs

You need to ensure that the uplink interface of the controller is configured as a trunk, and that all the necessary VLANs are created on the device. This is configured under *Device* → *rfsXXXX-MAC* (where XXXX is your controller series, and MAC is the latest 3 octets of its mac address). Edit the device configuration, and go to *Interface* → *Ethernet Ports*. Ensure that the up1 interface is set as trunk, with all the allowed VLANs. Next, create the VLAN under *Interface* → *Virtual Interfaces*.

## Roles (Per-User Firewall)

Since PacketFence 3.3.0, we now support roles for the Motorola hardware using WiNGS 5.x. To add roles, go in *Configuration* → *Security* → *Wireless Client Roles*. First create a global policy that will contain your roles. Next, create your Roles by clicking on the **Add** button on the bottom right. It is important to configure the Group Configuration line properly by setting the string name that we will use in the RADIUS packet. For example, for a Guests Role, you can put **Group Configuration Exact Guests**, and for a Staff Roles, you can put **Group Configuration Exact Staff**. In the roles configuration in *switches.conf*, you would have something like :

```
roles=CategoryGuests=Guests;CategoryStaff=Staff
```

Finally, don't forget to configure the appropriate firewall rules for your Roles! Make sure also to commit the configuration upon your changes.

**NOTE** | You need to have an **Advanced Security** license to enable the Per-User Firewall feature.

## WIPS

In order to enable the WIPS functionality on the Motorola, you need to follow this procedure. The steps have been done using the CLI.

First, Create a wips-policy:

```
wips-policy Rogue-AP
history-throttle-duration 86400
event ap-anomaly airjack
event ap-anomaly null-probe-response
event ap-anomaly asleep
event ap-anomaly ad-hoc-violation
event ap-anomaly ap-ssid-broadcast-in-beacon
event ap-anomaly impersonation-attack
ap-detection
```

Next, create an event policy:

```
event-system-policy PF-WIDS
event wips wips-event syslog off snmp on forward-to-switch off email off
```

Next, create or adjust your management policy to configure the SNMP traps. Here is an example policy, please note the two last lines:

```
management-policy default
no http server
https server
ssh
user admin password 1
e4c93663e3356787d451312eeb8d4704ef09f2331a20133764c3dc3121f13a5b role superuser
access all
user operator password 1
7c9b1fbb2ed7d5bb50dba0b563eac722b0676b45fed726d3e4e563b0c87d236d role monitor
access all
no snmp-server manager v3
snmp-server community public ro
snmp-server community private rw
```

```
snmp-server user snmpoperator v3 encrypted des auth md5 0 operator
snmp-server user snmptrap v3 encrypted des auth md5 0 motorola
snmp-server user snmpmanager v3 encrypted des auth md5 0 motorola
snmp-server enable traps
snmp-server host 10.0.0.100 v2c 162
```

You then need to tell your controller to use the event policy:

```
rfs6000 5C-0E-8B-17-F2-E3
...
use event-system-policy PF-WIDS
```

Finally, you need to configure a radio interface on your AP to act as a sensor. Here is an example configuration for a dual-radio AP650:

```
ap650 00-23-68-86-EB-BC
use profile default-ap650
use rf-domain default
hostname ap650-86EBBC
country-code ca
use wips-policy Rogue-AP
interface radio1
rf-mode sensor
channel smart
power smart
data-rates default
no preamble-short
radio-share-mode off
interface radio2
...
```

## 6.24.2. Older Firmwares (< 5.0)

*Option for Public Wireless LAN*

- Check the Dynamic Assignment check-box
- Select "MAC Authentication" under Authentication
- Click "Config..." choose the Colon delimiter format
- Un-check all encryption options
- Under RADIUS put in PacketFence's RADIUS Server information

*Option for Secure Wireless LAN*

- Check the Dynamic Assignment check-box
- Select "802.1X EAP" under Authentication
- Check WPA/WPA2-TKIP encryption option



- Under RADIUS put in PacketFence's RADIUS Server information

### SNMP Global configuration

Add the two Read-Only and Read-Write users under *Management Access* → *SNMP Access*.

## 6.25. Ruckus

### AAA Servers

We need to define the RADIUS and RADIUS accounting (mandatory):

Under *Configuration* → *AAA Servers*, click on the **Create New** button. Enter the proper configuration:

- Enter a server name
- Select either RADIUS or RADIUS accounting as the type
- Use PAP as the Auth Method
- Enter the IP address, and shared secret.
- Hit OK

Repeat the steps for the RADIUS and RADIUS accounting types. We need 1 definition for each otherwise RADIUS dynamic authorization won't work.

### WLAN Definitions

Under *Configuration* → *WLAN*, click on the **Create New** button. Enter the proper configuration:

#### Open SSID

- Enter a Name/SSID
- Select **Standard Usage** as the Type
- Select **MAC Address** as the authentication type
- Select **Open** as the encryption method
- Select the proper RADIUS server as the authentication server
- Select the proper RADIUS server as the accounting server

#### NOTE

The Open SSID does **NOT** support dynamic VLAN assignments on older versions of ZoneDirector (Firmware 9.3.0.0.83) but newer versions (Firmware 9.10.0.0.218 or newer) do support it.

#### Secure SSID

- Enter a Name/SSID
- Select **Standard Usage** as the Type
- Select **WPA2** as the authentication type
- Select **AES** as the encryption method
- Select the proper RADIUS server as the authentication server
- Select the proper RADIUS server as the accounting server

- Check the **Enable Dynamic VLAN** checkbox

## WIPS

To enable the WIPS feature of the Ruckus in order to send SNMP traps to PacketFence, the setup is fairly simple.

First, configure the controller to send the traps to PacketFence. Under *Configure* → *System* → *Network Management* → *SNMP Trap*:

\*Select "Enable SNMP Trap" \*Put the PacketFence Management IP in the Trap Server IP field

**NOTE** | The traps will arrive with the "public" community string

Next, you need to configure the Alarm Settings. Under *Configure* → *Alarm Settings*, make sure the following are selected:

\*Rogue AP Detected \*SSID-Spoofing AP Detected \*MAC-Spoofing AP Detected \*LAN Rogue AP Detected

Finally, enable the WIPS feature on the controller. Under *Configure* → *WIPS* → *Intrusion Detection and Prevention*, make sure both box are selected, click Apply.

### 6.25.1. Web Authentication

In order to use PacketFence as an external captive portal for web authentication, you will need to configure first your RADIUS authentication and accounting server (see steps above).

#### Hotspot configuration

Configure the Hotspot service profile to redirect devices to your PacketFence portal. Go on the ZoneDirector administration web page to the section *Configure*→*Hotspot Services*→*Create New*

**Create New**

**Name** Packetfence-Portal ← 1

**Redirection**

**WISPr Smart Client Support**  None  Enabled  Only WISPr Smart Client allowed

**Login Page\*** Redirect unauthenticated user to  for authentication.

**Start Page** After user is authenticated,  
 redirect to the URL that the user intends to visit.  
 redirect to the following URL:  ← 2  
← 3

**User Session**

**Session Timeout**  Terminate user session after  minutes

**Grace Period**  Allow users to reconnect with out re-authentication for  minutes ← 4

**Authentication/Accounting Servers**

**Authentication Server**  ← 5  
 Enable MAC authentication bypass(no redirection).

**Accounting Server**  ← 5 Send Interim-Update every  minutes

**Wireless Client Isolation**

Isolate wireless client traffic from other clients on the same AP.  
 Isolate wireless client traffic from all hosts on the same VLAN/subnet.  
 ← 6  
(Requires whitelist for gateway and other allowed hosts.)

**Location Information**

**Walled Garden**

Unauthenticated users are allowed to access the following destinations:  
(e.g. \*.mydomain.com,mydomain.com, 192.168.1.1:80, 192.168.1.1/24 or 192.168.1.1:80/24)

| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Order | Destination Address                            | Action                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | 1     | 192.168.1.5 <span style="color: red;">←</span> | <a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Clone</a> |

- 1 - Name of your Hotspot service
- 2 - Login Page: Url of PacketFence portal interface (http://192.168.1.5/Ruckus)
- 3 - Start Page: redirect to the following URL: http://192.168.1.5
- 4 - Authentication Server: Select the PacketFence authentication RADIUS server (default port 1812)
- 5 - Accounting Server: Select the PacketFence accounting RADIUS server (default 1813)
- 6 - Click on the Walled Garden and authorize the IP of PacketFence management interface

Save your configuration.

## WLAN configuration

Go to *Configure* → *WLANs* → *WLANs* → *Create New*

The screenshot shows the 'Create New' configuration page for a WLAN. It is divided into several sections: General Options, WLAN Usages, Authentication Options, Encryption Options, and Advanced Options. Red arrows with numbers 1 through 6 point to specific configuration fields: 1 points to the Name/ESSID field (containing 'WebAuth'), 2 points to the Type field (with 'Hotspot Service (WISPr)' selected), 3 points to the Authentication Method field (with 'Open' selected), 4 points to the Encryption Method field (with 'None' selected), 5 points to the Hotspot Services dropdown (containing 'Packetfence-Portal'), and 6 points to the Access VLAN field (with 'VLAN ID 43' entered).

- 1 - Name of your SSID
- 2 - Type: Hotspot Service (WISPr)
- 3 - Authentication Method: Open
- 4 - Encryption Method: None
- 5 - Hotspot Services: Your hotspot service name that you configured
- 6 - Access VLAN: The VLAN ID that should be assigned to devices after authentication

Save your configuration.

## PacketFence configuration

On the ZoneDirector configuration in PacketFence, you will need to specify -1 as the registration VLAN in order to display the captive portal to the end device.

You will need to deactivate the force secure redirect on the captive portal under *Configuration → Captive Portal → Secure redirect → Unchecked*

The captive portal needs to listen on the management interface, so you will need to add the portal daemon to the management interface under *Configuration → Interfaces → Management Interface*

Example:

```
[interface eth0]
ip=192.168.1.5
type=management,portal
mask=255.255.255.0
```

To apply the configuration, restart PacketFence using the following command: `service packetfence restart`

## 6.25.2. Ruckus Roles

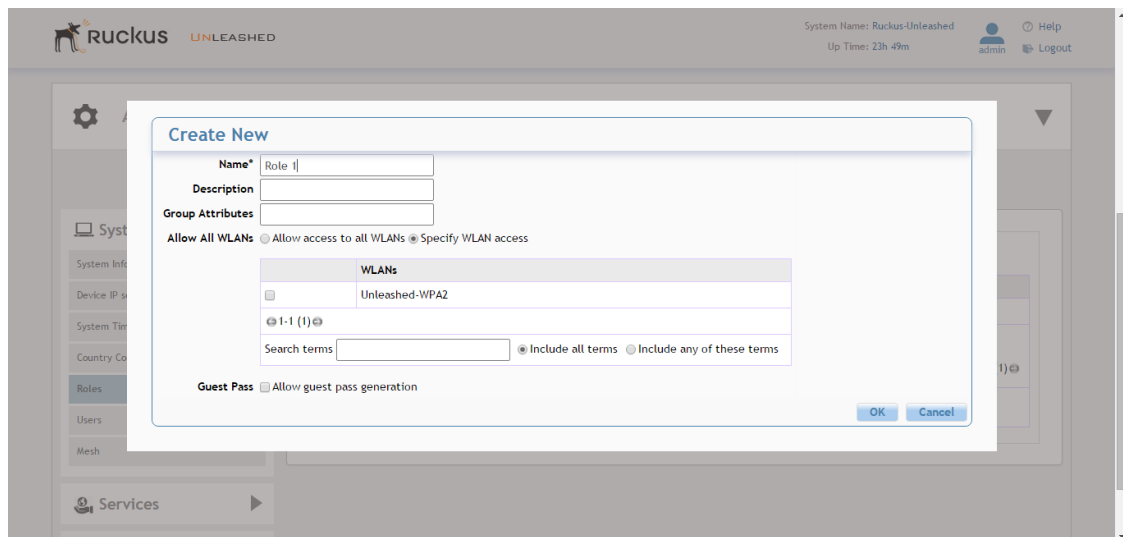
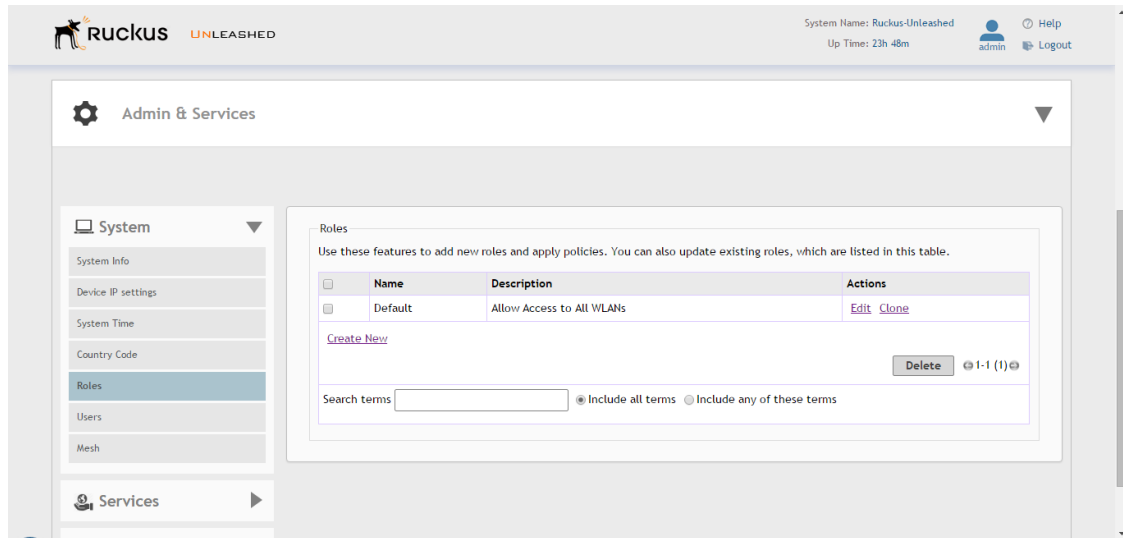
### Roles Configuration

Ruckus allows you to define roles. These roles link all users to the internal WLAN and permit access to all WLAN by default. You can still limit access to certain WLAN. Additionally, these roles can be used to apply per-user rate-limits and ACLs in newer versions of the Zone Director firmware, specifying also advanced options like Application Recognition Policies, URL filtering profiles, Etc.

To create a new user Role:

- 1 - Go to `_Admin & Services -> System -> Roles_`. The Roles page appears, displaying a Default role in the Roles table.
- 2 - Click Create New.
- 3 - Enter a Name and a short Description for this role.
- 4 - Choose the options for this role from the following:
  - Group Attributes: Fill in this field only if you are creating a user role based on Group attributes extracted from an Active Directory server. Enter the User Group name here. Active Directory/LDAP users with the same group attributes are automatically mapped to this user role.
  - Allow All WLANs: You have two options: (1) Allow Access to all WLANs, or (2) Specify WLAN Access. If you select the second option, you must specify the WLANs by clicking the check box next to each one.

The images below show the steps needed for Ruckus Unleashed.



If using ZoneDirector, then the steps are very similar as shown below:

To create a new user Role:

- 1 - Go to `_Services & Profiles -> Roles_`. The Roles and Policies page appears, displaying a Default role in the Roles table.
- 2 - Click Create New.
- 3 - Enter a Name and a short Description for this role.
- 4 - Choose the options for this role from the following:

Group Attributes: Fill in this field only if you are creating a user role based on Group attributes extracted from an Active Directory server.

Enter the User Group name here. Active Directory/LDAP users with the same group attributes are automatically mapped to this user role.

Allow All WLANs: You have two options: (1) Allow Access to all WLANs, or (2) Specify WLAN Access. If you select the second option, you must specify the WLANs by clicking the check box next to each one. Don't

enable the "Guest Pass" or "Administration" options as these allow users with the given Roles to get administrative access to the ZoneDirector console.

5 - Additionally, you can enable the "Role Based Access Control Policy" option which is the most interesting one from PacketFence's point of view, since this allows specific PF roles to receive specific ACLs, Different rate limits, thus further enhancing the value of Packetfence.

6 - Looking at the RBAC Policy options one can define the following:

OS type: Limit access based on operating system/device type.

VLAN: Assign a VLAN ID to this role. (This can be overridden directly from PacketFence if using the \_Role by VLAN ID\_ option)

Rate Limiting: Limit per-station uplink and downlink speeds.

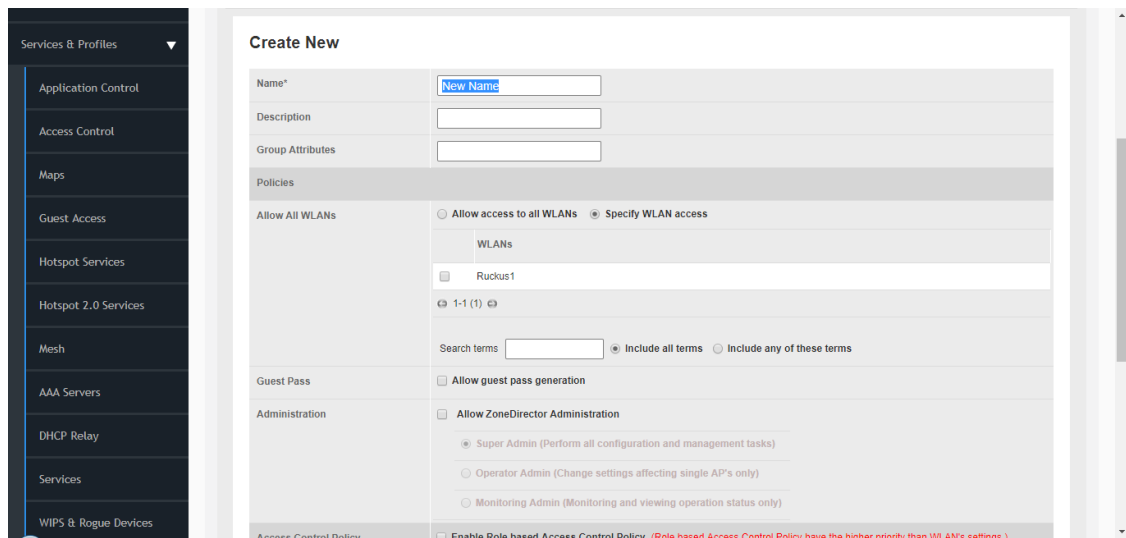
L3/L4/IP address ACL: Apply a Layer 3/Layer 4/IP address ACL to this role.

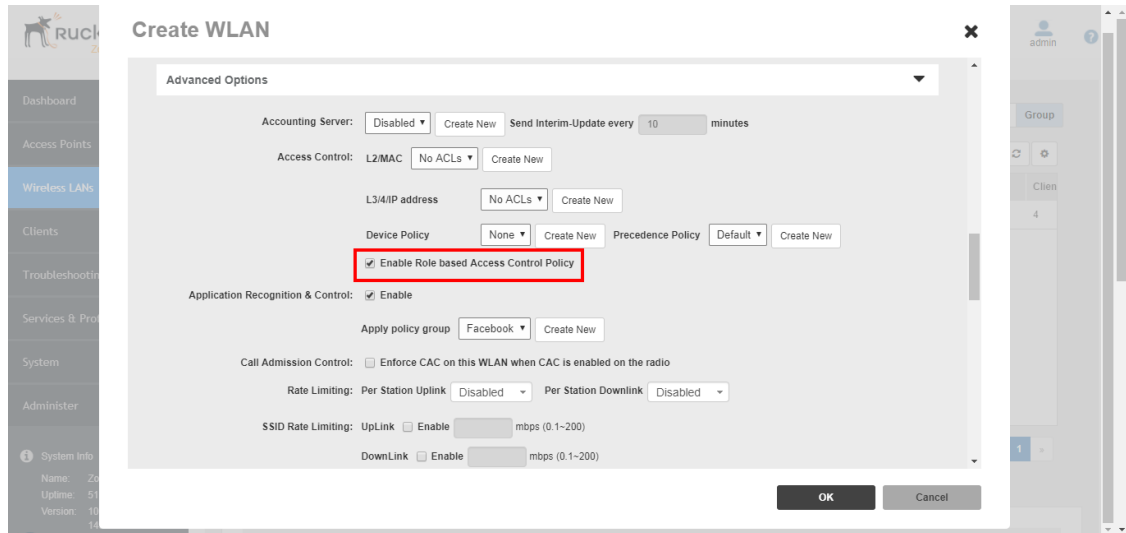
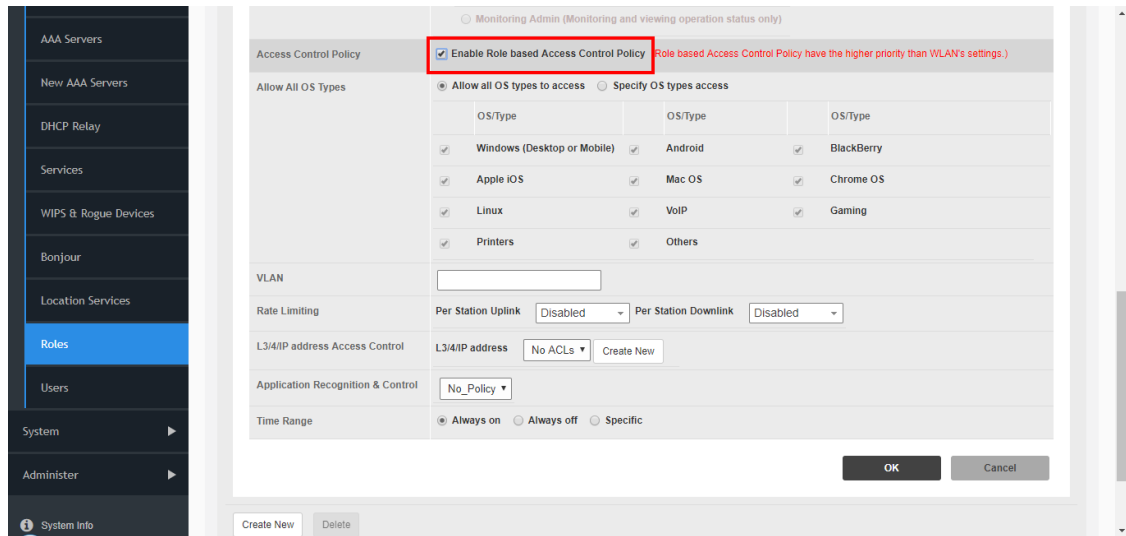
Application Recognition & Control: Apply an application policy to this role.

Time Range: Limit the time range during which this role will be allowed to access the WLAN.

7 - Finally, if using the RBAC feature in ZoneDirector, make sure to enable the RBAC functionality for the WLAN created before:

To do this, edit the WLAN, expand the Advanced Options, and enable the check box next to Enable Role Based Access Control Policy in the Access Control section.





## PacketFence Configuration

On the PacketFence side you need to use *role by switch role* and add the same name as in the *Group Attribute* you created on the Ruckus side.

When a device connects to the SSID, PacketFence will return a VLAN identifier and a RuckusUserGroup attribute and if the role is allowed on the WLAN then the device will be authorized on the WLAN. Additionally, if RBAC is in use, the specific upstream/downstream rate limits, L2/L3 ACLS and Application Recognition Policies will be applied to the specific user, having the possibility of, for instance, giving different user Roles different access speeds. In case that the role is not allowed on the WLAN then the device will not be allowed to connect.

## 6.26. Ruckus SmartZone

Ruckus SmartZone is extremely flexible and allows for very different deployment scenarios, with the controller being an "on-premise" appliance managing a single tenant as well as a cloud-hosted solution where multiple tenants can share a single SmartZone instance by using its "managed partner domains" capabilities (For SmartZone-Highscale). As such, when it comes to AAA



capabilities, the RADIUS connection between Ruckus and PacketFence supports two modes of operation: PROXY mode and non-PROXY mode.

In Proxy Mode, all RADIUS connections are done between SmartZone and PacketFence. In this mode, the RADIUS interface supports the use of *Disconnect* and *CoA* messages sent from PacketFence (the RADIUS server) to SmartZone (The RADIUS client). If proxy mode is used, it is highly recommended to have SmartZone deployed locally in the LAN together with PacketFence as otherwise, it might be needed to open specific ports (RADIUS CoA/Disconnect ports) for PacketFence to be able to reach SmartZone if SmartZone is in a cloud scenario. Additionally, this would also mandate PacketFence to be hosted behind a static public IP, which is not always the case for certain business ISPs, as this IP would need to be configured in SmartZone as the target RADIUS IP.

In non-PROXY mode, though, the AP can send the RADIUS Access Request directly to PacketFence. This allows for SmartZone to be hosted in a public cloud. In this case, though, only an immediate response to the Access Request message can be issued by PacketFence and accepted by the AP. As clients can be roaming between APs, RADIUS CoA or Disconnect messages are not supported since the client might no longer be connected to the targeted AP. In this case, PacketFence must rely instead in the WISPr web services to trigger a disconnection / VLAN move after authentication.

In short, if you're hosting a SmartZone appliance (physical or virtual) inside your LAN and PacketFence and SmartZone can talk directly without extraneous port-maps, use the PROXY mode for RADIUS as its much simpler. But if using a shared or external SmartZone server while keeping PacketFence local to your LAN, then you'll probably have to opt for the NON-PROXY mode.

### 6.26.1. Webauth

### 6.26.2. SmartZone configuration

First, you will need to define your RADIUS server in *Configuration* → *Service and Profiles* → *Authentication*. In newer versions (at least Firmware 3.6) make sure to select the proper RADIUS model (proxy or non-proxy according to your deployment details as described above)

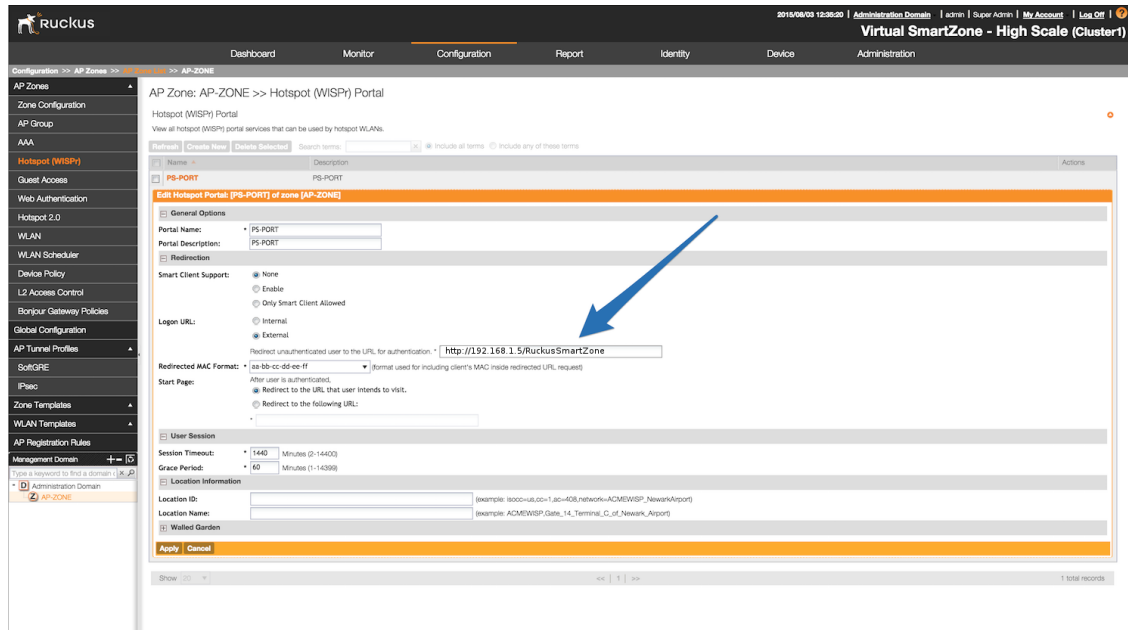
Create your server using the following information (where 192.168.1.5 is the IP address of your PacketFence management interface):

- 'IP Address:' 192.168.1.5
- 'Port': 1812
- 'Secret': useStrongerSecret

Then, in *Configuration* → *Service and Profiles* → *Accounting*, create a server with the following information:

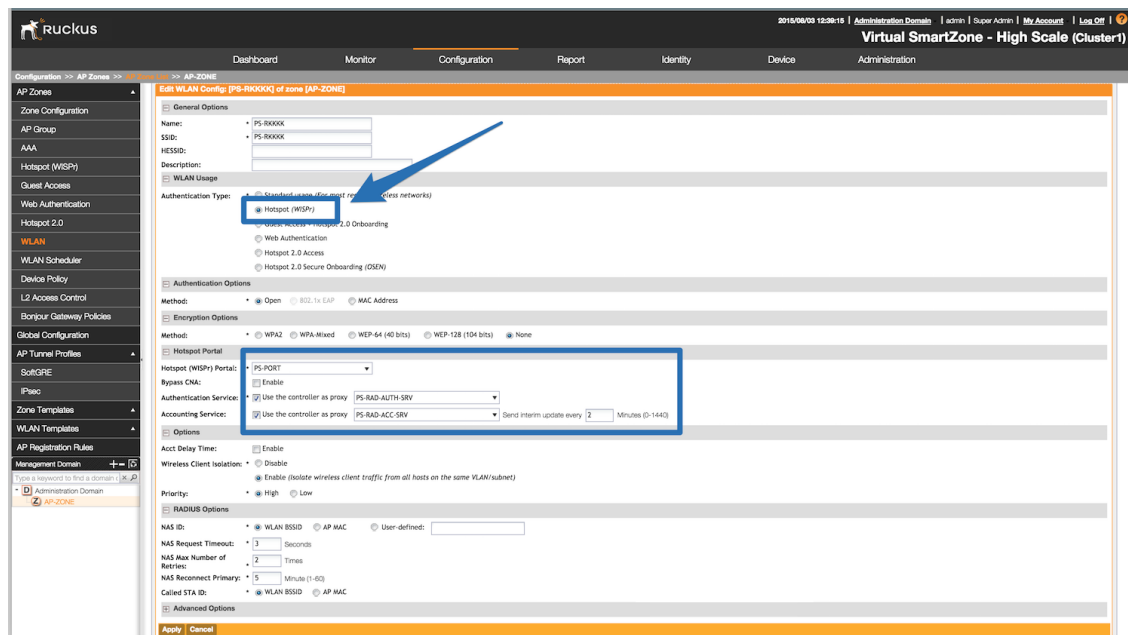
- 'IP Address:' 192.168.1.5
- 'Port': 1813
- 'Secret': useStrongerSecret

After, create a Hotspot in *Configuration* → *AP Zones* → *Your Zone* → *Hotspot WISPr* → *Create New*. Adjust 192.168.1.5 to the IP address of your portal.



Then, still on this page, in the 'Walled Gardens', make sure you add the portal IP address in this list.

Next, you will need to configure your WLAN to use the Hotspot authentication and point it to PacketFence. Also ensure you set 'Use the controller as a proxy'.



Now, you should configure the Northbound API of the SmartZone so PacketFence can communicate with it. In order to do so, go in *Configuration* → *System* → *Northbound Portal Interface* (Can be called "WISPr Northbound Interfaces" in newer versions of SmartZone) and set the 'Password' and save it. Keep the password closeby as it will be required for the PacketFence configuration. In this example, it will be **passwordForNorthboundAPI**. In case you're using a SmartZone High-scale, you can define a northbound username/password for each Managed Domain so that each of your customers can have their own credentials. In this case, define both a

username and password and keep both closeby.

In order to receive the information not encrypted in the URL, you will need to connect on the Ruckus SmartZone controller using SSH and do the following command:

```
no encrypt-mac-ip
```

### 6.26.3. PacketFence configuration

In PacketFence, add a new switch in *Configuration* → *Switches* with the following configuration:

- **Definition** → **External Portal Enforcement** should be enabled
- **Definition** → **Type**: Ruckus SmartZone Wireless Controller
- **Definition** → **Mode**: production
- **Definition** → **Controller IP Address**: IP address of SmartZone controller
- **Roles** → **Role by VLAN ID** should be enabled
- **Roles** → **registration VLAN**: -1
- **Roles** → **Role by Switch Role** can be optionally enabled (see below)
- **RADIUS** → **Secret passphrase**: useStrongerSecret
- **Web Services** → **Username**: usernameForNorthboundAPI
- **Web Services** → **Password**: passwordForNorthboundAPI

The Web Services Username is optional and only needed if using the "Managed Partner Domains" feature of SmartZone with multiple different Northbound API credentials (one per SmartZone domain). Additionally, for troubleshooting purposes, one can define the *Web Services* → *Transport* to HTTP instead of the default HTTPS so as to simplify troubleshooting by capturing the traffic between PacketFence and SmartZone.

### 6.26.4. Mac Authentication

For MAC authentication you have two options. Using SmartZone as a *proxy RADIUS server* (where all RADIUS requests are sent between the SmartZone controller and PacketFence directly) and *non-radius RADIUS* where the APs send RADIUS messages directly to PacketFence. This non-proxy scenario is useful when both the APs and PacketFence are "inside the LAN" but the SmartZone controller is in the WAN (for example, hosted in a commercial cloud provider). In this case, direct communication between SmartZone and PacketFence might not be possible as the WAN IP for PacketFence might be dynamic.

### 6.26.5. PROXY mode

### 6.26.6. SmartZone configuration

First, you will need to define your RADIUS server in *Service and Profiles* → *Authentication*. Then select the "Proxy (SZ Authenticator)" tab and then select the zone for which you want to create the AAA server.

Create your server using the following information (where 192.168.1.5 is the IP address of your PacketFence management interface):

- 'Name' : PacketFence-Auth
- 'Service Protocol': RADIUS
- 'IP Address:' 192.168.1.5
- 'Port': 1812
- 'Secret': useStrongerSecret

## Create Authentication Service ✕

\* Name:   
 Friendly Name:   
 Description:   
 \* Service Protocol:  RADIUS  Active Directory  LDAP  
 Cluster Redundancy:  OFF  Enable Service for Standby Cluster  
 RADIUS Service Options  
 RFC 5580 Out of Band Location Delivery:  OFF  Enable for Ruckus AP Only  
 Primary Server  
 \* IP Address:   
 \* Port:   
 \* Shared Secret:   
 \* Confirm Secret:   
 Primary Server (Standby Cluster)

Then, in *Service and Profiles* → *Accounting*. Then select the "Proxy" tab and then select the zone for which you want to create the AAA server. Create the server using the information below:

- 'Name' : PacketFence-Acct
- 'IP Address:' 192.168.1.5
- 'Port': 1813
- 'Secret': useStrongerSecret

Give both authentication and accounting services an easily identifiable name such as "PacketFence-Auth" and "Packerfence-Acct". This names are purely for identification purposes only.

You can now create an SSID with OPEN/MAC authentication.

In the *Wireless LANs* top level menu , from the System tree hierarchy, select the Zone where you want to create a WLAN and then click *Create*.

Enter the *name* and *SSID*, then for *Authentication Type* select "Standard Usage" and for *Method* select "MAC Address".

## Create WLAN Configuration

The screenshot shows a configuration window with two main sections: "General Options" and "Authentication Options".

**General Options:**

- Name: [text input]
- SSID: [text input]
- Description: [text input]
- Zone: [dropdown menu]
- WLAN Group: [dropdown menu with "No data available" and a "+ Create" button]

**Authentication Options:**

**Authentication Type:**

- Standard usage (For most regular wireless networks)
- Hotspot (WISPr)
- Guest Access
- Web Authentication
- Hotspot 2.0 Access
- Hotspot 2.0 Onboarding
- WeChat

**Method:**

- Open
- 802.1X EAP
- MAC Address
- 802.1X & MAC

Buttons: OK, Cancel

The rest of the authentication options can be left "as-is" (The default *MAC Address Format* of "aabbccdeeff" should work fine)

For the *Authentication & Accounting Service* enable the "Use controller as proxy" checkbox for both Authentication and Accounting and select the previously created Authentication and Accounting profiles. (PacketFence-Auth and PacketFence-Acct respectively if you used the names suggested above)

Finally in the *Advanced Options* section, under *Access VLAN* section, make sure to enable the *Enable Dynamic VLAN (AAA Override)* checkbox is enabled so that the client receives a VLAN assigned by PacketFence.

### 6.26.7. PacketFence configuration

In PacketFence, add a new switch in *Configuration* → *Switches* with the following configuration:

- Definition → **External Portal Enforcement** should NOT be enabled
- Definition → Type: **Ruckus SmartZone Wireless Controller**
- Definition → Mode: **production**
- Definition → Use CoA: Can be enabled
- Definition → Controller IP Address: IP address of SmartZone controller
- Definition → CoA Port: **3799**
- Roles → Role by VLAN ID should be enabled
- Roles → registration VLAN: Your registration VLAN ID
- Roles → isolation VLAN: Your isolation VLAN ID
- Roles → Role by Switch Role can be optionally enabled (see below)

- RADIUS → Secret passphrase: `useStrongerSecret`

## 6.26.8. Non-PROXY mode

For non-proxy MAC authentication, repeat the same configuration as for PROXY mode but create the Authentication and Accounting servers under the "Non-Proxy (AP Authenticator)" menu. Additionally, configure the "WISPr northbound credentials" as for the Webauth section. Only the username / password is required, no other configuration is needed (portals, etc)

## 6.26.9. PacketFence configuration

In PacketFence, add a new switch in *Configuration* → *Switches* with the following configuration:

- Definition → External Portal Enforcement should NOT be enabled
- Definition → Type: `Ruckus SmartZone Wireless Controller`
- Definition → Mode: `production`
- Definition → Deauthentication Method: `HTTPS`
- Definition → Controller IP Address: IP address of SmartZone controller
- Roles → Role by VLAN ID should be enabled
- Roles → registration VLAN: Your registration VLAN ID
- Roles → isolation VLAN: Your isolation VLAN ID
- Roles → Role by Switch Role can be optionally enabled (see below)
- RADIUS → Secret passphrase: `useStrongerSecret`
- Web Services → Transport: `HTTPS`
- Web Services → Username: `usernameForNorthboundAPI`
- Web Services → Password: `passwordForNorthboundAPI`

During troubleshooting, you can change the Deauth method and Web Services Transport to HTTP instead of HTTPS can capture the traffic destined to the SmartZone's IP on port 9080 to inspect the WISPr API calls if needed.

For NON-PROXY Auth mode when using MAC-Authenticatin we need to set the "Deauthentication Method" to HTTP or HTTPS since this will force the disconnect message to be sent using the Northbound WISPr API instead of RADIUS Disconnect / CoA. If the *Deauthentication Method* is not set, then the code will try to use RADIUS by default and fail to disconnect the user.

## 6.26.10. Ruckus Roles

### Roles Configuration

Ruckus SmartZone allows you to define roles for RBAC purposes. They can be used to apply per-user rate-limits and ACLs in newer versions of the SmartZone firmware, specifying also advanced options like Application Recognition Policies, URL filtering profiles, (Firmware profiles)

To create and be able to use the role, we need to perform several steps:

1 - Create a `_User Traffic Profile_`

- 2 - Create a matching `_User Role_`
- 3 - Reference the User Role in the RADIUS Authentication server

The detailed steps are as follow:

Go to *Services & Profiles* → *Access Control* on the left menu and then click on the *User Traffic* tab. On this page, optionally select a Domain/Zone, click the "Create" button and give the new UTP name. Define any additional parameters such as Uplink/Downlink rate limits, define any ACLs you might want for that role and also select, if needed, an Application Recognition and Control policy and URL Filtering Control policies.

### Create User Traffic Profile ✕

**Name:**

**Description:**

**Rate Limiting:** Uplink  OFF  Mbps (0.1-200)  
 Downlink  OFF  Mbps (0.1-200)

**Traffic Access Control List** ▼

\* Default Access: Default access if no rule is matched:  Allow  Block

| Priority ▲ | Description | Matching Criteria                         | Type | Access |
|------------|-------------|---|------|--------|
| 1          | Allow DNS   | Destination Port:53<br>Direction:Upstream | IPv4 | Allow  |
| 2          | Allow DHCP  | Destination Port:67<br>Direction:Upstream | IPv4 | Allow  |

**Application Recognition and Control** ▼

Application Policy:

**URL Filtering Control** ▼

URL Filtering Profile:

Next, go to *Clients* → *Users & Roles* menu and select the *User Roles* tab. On this page, optionally select a Domain/Zone, click the "Create" button and give the new User Role a name. This name is purely for identification only and its not the RADIUS attribute. You can choose any meaningful name. You should also select the User Traffic Profile defined in the previous step as well as, optionallu, a Firewall Profile.

## Create User Role ✕

\* **Role Name:**

**Description:**

\* **User Traffic Profile:** System Default ▼ + ✎

\* **Firewall Profile:** System Default ▼ + ✎

**Access VLAN:** **VLAN ID**

OFF  Enable VLAN Pooling

OK
Cancel

Finally, under *Configuration* → *Service and Profiles* → *Authentication*, select the RADIUS server created previously (Either in Proxy or NON-Proxy mode). Then, under the *User Role Mapping* section, click on *Create*.

## Edit Zone AAA Server: packetfence-si ✕

**General Options** ▼

\* **Name:**

**Description:**

\* **Type:**  RADIUS  Active Directory  LDAP

**Backup RADIUS:**  OFF  Enable Secondary Server

**Primary Server** ▼

\* **IP Address:**

\* **Port:**

\* **Shared Secret:**

\* **Confirm Secret:**

**User Role Mapping** ▼

+ ✎ Configure ✎ Delete

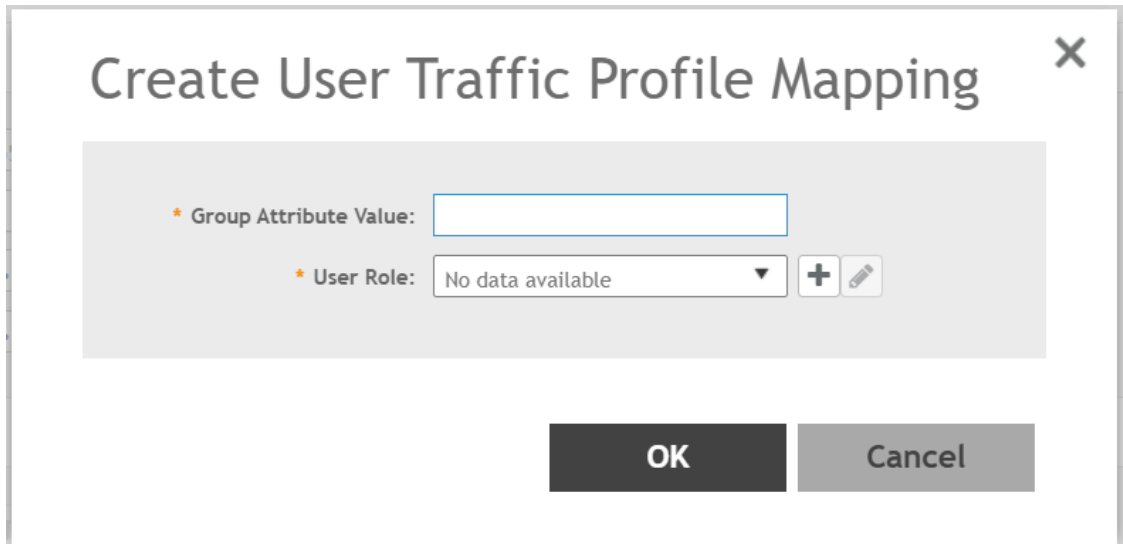
| Group Attribute Value ▲ | User Role    | User Traffic Profile | Firewall Profile |
|-------------------------|--------------|----------------------|------------------|
| ROLE-10MB               | SI-ROLE-10MB | SI10MB               | SI10MB_fw        |
| ROLE-20MB               | SI-ROLE-20MB | SI20MB               | SI20MB_fw        |
| ROLE-5MB                | SI-ROLE-5MB  | SI5MB                | SI5MB_fw         |
| ROLE-UL                 | SI-ROLE-UL   | SIUL                 | SIUL_fw          |

OK
Cancel

A new window will open where we can create a "User Traffic Profile Mapping". Under *Group*



*Attribute Value* enter the string that will be sent from PacketFence (Configured under the Switch configuration in the "Role by Switch Role" section). This string must match between PacketFence and SmartZone and is the string sent in the RADIUS reply under the Ruckus-User-Group VSA. Then, under the "User Role", select the previously created User Role.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Create User Traffic Profile Mapping". It contains two input fields: "Group Attribute Value" (a text box) and "User Role" (a dropdown menu with "No data available" selected). There are also two icons (a plus sign and a pencil) next to the "User Role" dropdown. At the bottom, there are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

Repeat all the steps above for as many different roles as needed. Keep in mind that you can define different roles on SmartZone than those on PacketFence. For example, on SmartZone you might have roles called "10Mbps", "20Mbps" and so on (related to the specific rate limits assigned to the users) and then in PacketFence, assign the "10Mbps" SmartZone role to the "Students" and "Guests" PacketFence Roles, and the "20Mbps" SZ role to "Faculty" and "IT" PF roles.

### PacketFence Configuration

On the PacketFence side you need to use *role by switch role* and add the same name as in the *Group Attribute* you created on the Ruckus side.

So when a device connects to the SSID, PacketFence will return a VLAN identifier and a RuckusUserGroup attribute and the device will be authorized on the WLAN on the specific VLAN. Additionally, if RBAC is in use, the specific upstream/downstream rate limits, L2/L3 ACLS and Application Recognition Policies will be applied to the specific user, having the possibility of, for instance, giving different user Roles different access speeds.

## 6.27. Trapeze

In order to have the Trapeze controller working with PacketFence, you need to define the RADIUS configuration and the proper service profiles.

### RADIUS configuration

```
set radius server PF address 192.168.1.5 timeout 5 retransmit 3 deadline 0 key
secret
set server group PF-RADIUS members PF
```

## Service Profiles

Here we define two service profiles, one for the open SSID (PacketFence-Public) and one for the WPA2-Enterprise SSID (PacketFence-Secure):

```
set service-profile PF-Open ssid-name PacketFence-Public
set service-profile PF-Open ssid-type clear
set service-profile PF-Open auth-fallthru last-resort
set service-profile PF-Open cipher-tkip enable
set service-profile PF-Open auth-dot1x disable
set service-profile PF-Open 11n mode-na required
set service-profile PF-Open attr vlan-name WLAN_REG

set service-profile PF-Secure ssid-name PacketFence-Secure
set service-profile PF-Secure cipher-tkip enable
set service-profile PF-Secure cipher-ccmp enable
set service-profile PF-Secure wpa-ie enable
set service-profile PF-Secure rsn-ie enable
set service-profile PF-Secure 11n mode-na required
set service-profile PF-Secure attr vlan-name Wlan

set radio-profile default service-profile PacketFence-Public
set radio-profile default service-profile PacketFence-Secure
```

## AAA configuration

Finally, we need to tie the service profiles with the proper AAA configuration.

```
set accounting dot1x ssid PacketFence-Secure ** start-stop PF-RADIUS
set accounting mac ssid PacketFence-Public * start-stop PF-RADIUS
set authentication mac ssid PacketFence-Public * PF-RADIUS
set authentication dot1x ssid PacketFence-Secure ** pass-through PF-RADIUS
```

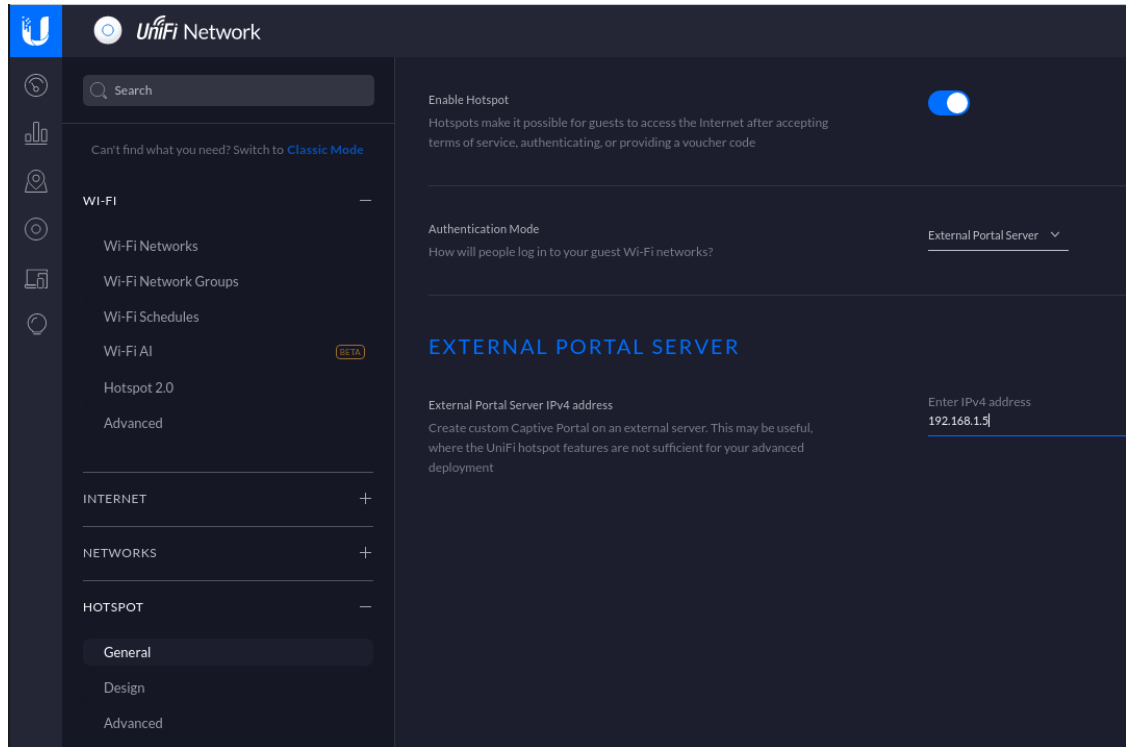
## 6.28. Ubiquiti

### 6.28.1. Web Authentication

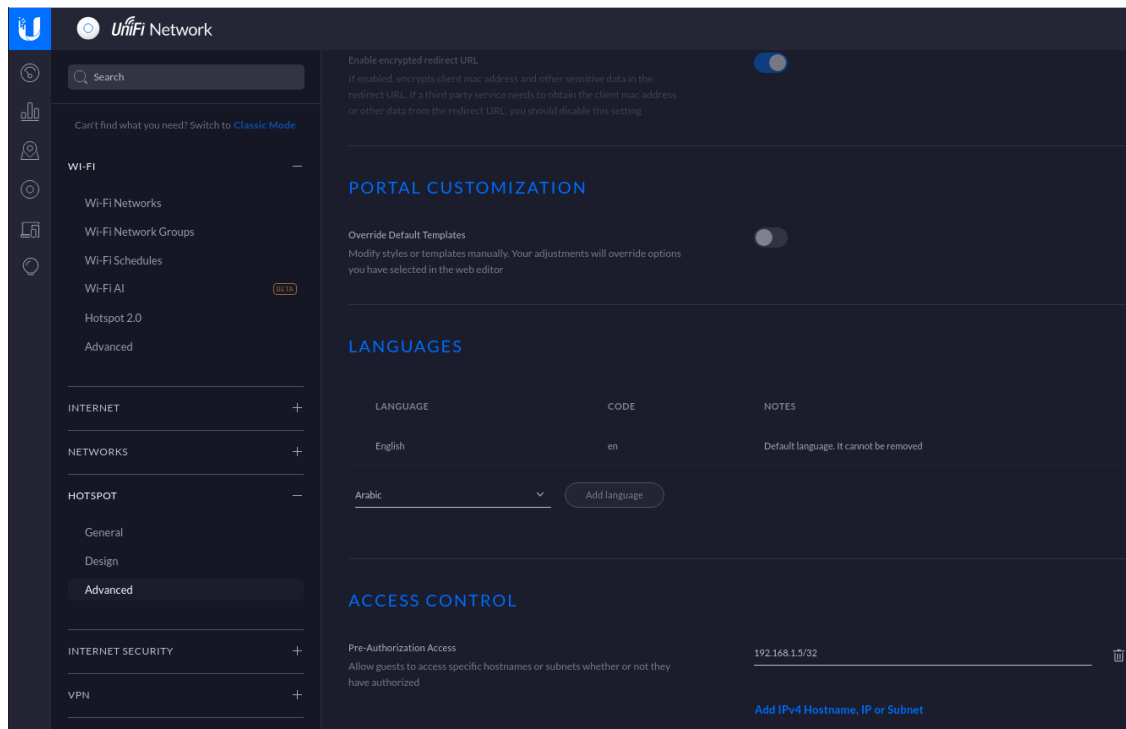
#### Unifi side

In order to configure web authentication (external captive-portal) on Ubiquiti access points, you must have access to a Unifi controller and your APs must be connected to it.

First, you must configure the guest policy. Go in *Settings* → *hotspot* → *general* and configure it as shown below:



Next, you must allow the device to reach the portal. Go in *Settings* → *hotspot* → *advanced* and configure it as shown below:

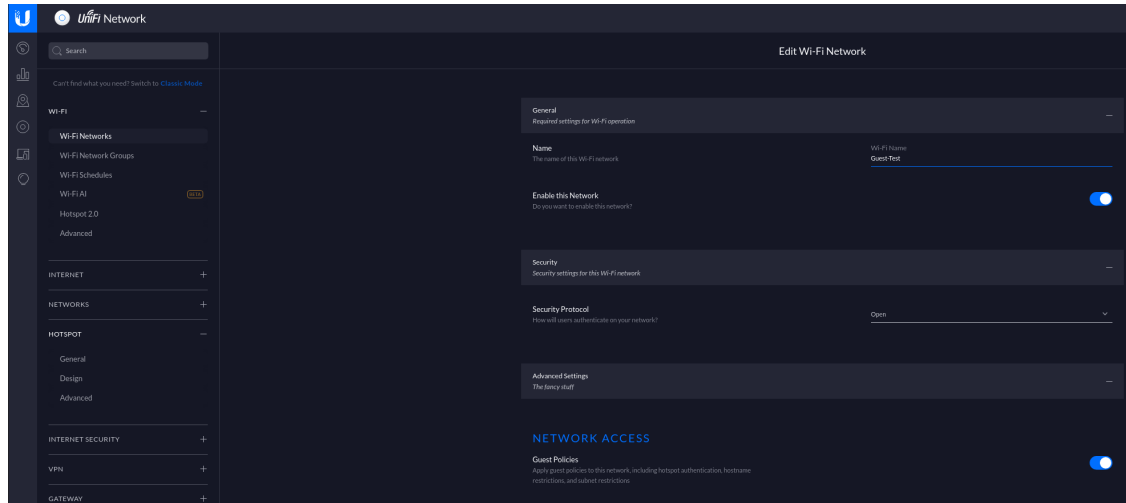


Make sure you enabled *Enable Guest Portal*, and that you've set *External portal server*.

You also need to enter the IP address of a portal enabled interface on the PacketFence server in

Custom Portal. Then in the ACCESS CONTROL section, add that same IP address to the Pre-Authorization Access

Then, still in the settings, create or edit a new SSID with the following settings:



You need to ensure [STUN protocol](#) is allowed between access points and controller so that controller gets [instant notifications](#) from access points. That's important to have a correct deauthentication mechanism.

## PacketFence side

You have two choices to define the APs in PacketFence, by ip address (or range) or by MAC addresses.

By IP address:

If you decide to define the AP by ip then you will need to define the controller as a switch and define the Controller IP and Webservices information (Transport/Username/Password) in his configuration.

Then once done, restart pfcron service and run that to fill the PacketFence cache:

```
/usr/local/pf/bin/pfcmd pfcron ubiquiti_ap_mac_to_ip
```

And verify that you have an entry for each AP

```
/usr/local/pf/bin/pfcmd cache switch_distributed list
```

By MAC address:

Once this is done, you will need to define all your APs MAC addresses in the PacketFence switches with a configuration similar to this:

```
[00:11:22:33:44:55]
```

```
description=Ubiquiti AP
ExternalPortalEnforcement=Y
type=Ubiquiti::Unifi
controllerIp=1.2.3.4
wsTransport=HTTPS
wsUser=admin
wsPwd=admin
```

Where :

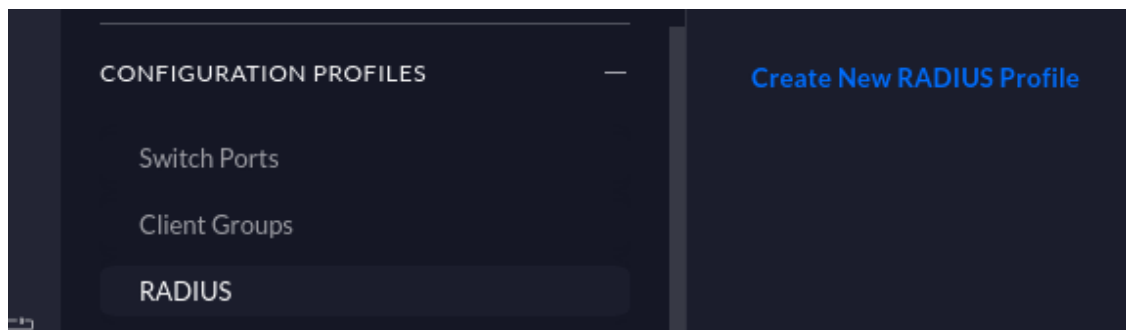
- **wsTransport** is the protocol used to connect to port 8443 of the Unifi controller and should be HTTPS. This is configured in the 'Web Services' tab of the switch.
- **wsUser** is a valid administrator username on your Unifi controller. This is configured in the 'Web Services' tab of the switch.
- **wsPwd** is the password that is associated to the wsUser. This is configured in the 'Web Services' tab of the switch.
- **controllerIp** is the IP address of your Unifi controller. This is configured in the 'Definition' tab of the switch.

## 6.28.2. VLAN Enforcement

In order to configure VLAN enforcement on the Unifi controller, you need first to configure a RADIUS profile, then a secure wireless network.

Important : You cannot reuse a VLAN ID for dynamic VLAN if it is set as a static value for another SSID on the same AP. So, if you have a SSID set to use VLAN 10, you cannot use VLAN ID 10 for RADIUS controlled VLAN users as those users will not get an IP address.

### AAA Configuration



### Create New RADIUS Profile ✕

---

#### GENERAL

Name  
packetfence

**Enable Wired**   
Enable RADIUS assigned  
VLAN for wired network

**Enable Wireless**   
Enable RADIUS assigned  
VLAN for wireless network

---

#### AUTHENTICATION SERVERS

| IP Address  | Port | Shared Secret            |
|-------------|------|--------------------------|
| 192.168.1.5 | 1812 | <input type="password"/> |

[Add Auth Server](#)

---

#### ACCOUNTING

**Enable Accounting**

**Enable Interim Update**

Interim Update Interval

#### RADIUS Accounting Servers

| IP Address  | Port | Shared Secret            |
|-------------|------|--------------------------|
| 192.168.1.5 | 1813 | <input type="password"/> |

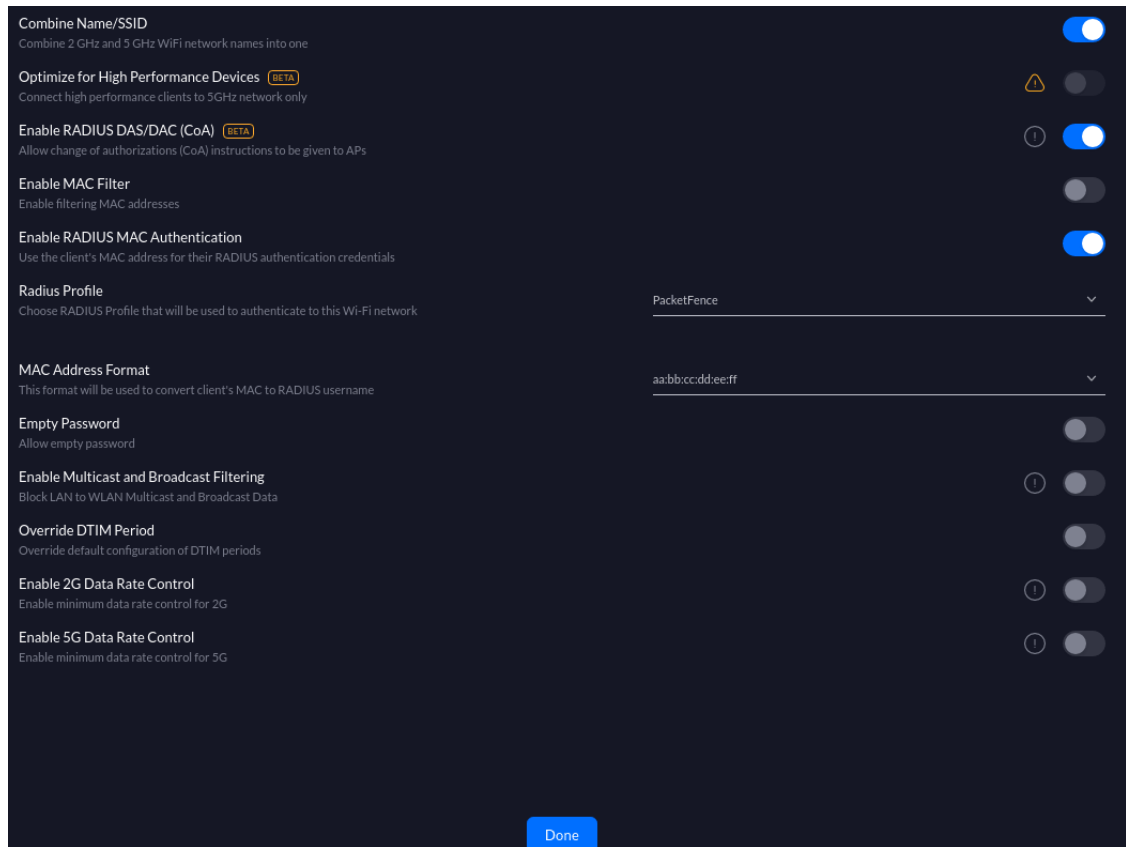
[Add Accounting Server](#)

## Open SSID

Create a open profile:

The screenshot shows a configuration page for a Wi-Fi network profile. At the top, the SSID is set to 'PacketFence-Open'. The page is divided into several sections:

- General:** Includes a toggle for 'Enable this Network' which is turned on. Below it is the question 'Do you want to enable this network?'.
- Security:** The 'Security Protocol' is set to 'Open'.
- Network Access:** A section for configuring which networks can communicate to and from this network.
- Guest Policies:** A toggle for applying guest policies is turned off.
- Advanced Settings:** A section for 'The fancy stuff' containing several options:
  - Hide SSID:** Turned off.
  - Client Group:** Set to 'Default'.
  - Enable Fast Roaming:** Turned off.
  - Enable Multicast Enhancement:** Turned off.
  - Use a VLAN:** Turned off.
  - Enable UAPSD:** Turned off.



## Secure SSID

Create a secured profile:



**General**  
Required settings for Wi-Fi operation

**Name**  
The name of this Wi-Fi network

Wi-Fi Name  
PacketFence-Secure

**Enable this Network**  
Do you want to enable this network?

**Security**  
Security settings for this Wi-Fi network

**Security Protocol**  
How will users authenticate on your network?

WPA Enterprise

**CCMP Encryption**  
If you disable CCMP encryption the network will fall back to the TKIP protocol, which is not secure

**Radius Profile**  
Choose RADIUS Profile that will be used to authenticate to this Wi-Fi network

PacketFence

**Advanced Settings**  
The fancy stuff

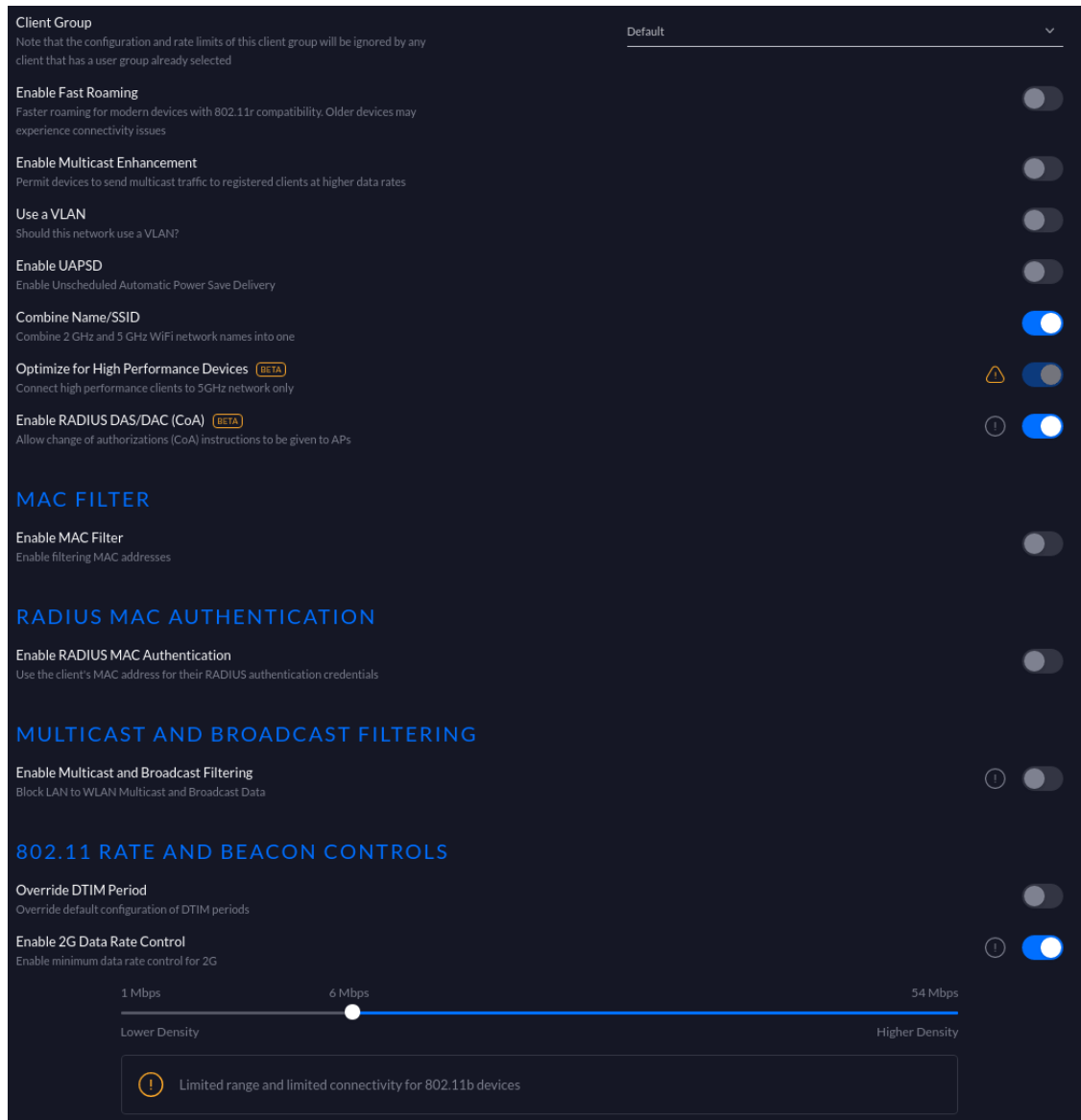
**NETWORK ACCESS**

**Guest Policies**  
Apply guest policies to this network, including hotspot authentication, hostname restrictions, and subnet restrictions

**MISCELLANEOUS**

**Refresh Shared Secret**  
Improve security by creating a new GTK key every hour

**Hide SSID**  
Conceal this network's SSID while broadcasting?



## CoA Support

CoA support has been introduced in the new version of the controller (Tested on 5.13.10), so on access reevaluation if you selected RADIUS as disconnect method then PacketFence will try a CoA.

## 6.29. Xirrus

### 6.29.1. Xirrus WiFi Arrays

Xirrus Access Points can be configured to work with PacketFence quickly since Xirrus supports RADIUS assigned VLANs out of the box.

First, RADIUS server configuration. Set the RADIUS server to be PacketFence's IP:

```

radius-server ! (global settings)
!
external
  primary server 192.168.1.5
  primary secret useStrongerSecret
!
accounting
  primary server 192.168.1.5
  primary secret useStrongerSecret
exit
exit
exit

```

Enable SNMP Agent on the access point:

```

snmp
!
v2
  community read-write public
  community read-only public
exit
!
exit

```

Finally, don't forget to create the SSID you want and the proper bindings with the LAN. Open SSID should be configured to perform MAC Authentication and Secure SSID should be configured to perform 802.1X (WPA-Enterprise or WPA2-Enterprise).

### External portal SSID

- Set **Encryption / Authentication** to None / Open
- Then check the WPR checkbox
- Then in in the section Web Page Redirect Configuration set **Server** to External Login
- Set the **Redirect URL** to <http://192.168.1.5/Xirrus>
- Set the **Redirect Secret** to any passphrase of your choice
- In the **RADIUS Configuration** section set the RADIUS server to point to your PacketFence server

[1] Be careful to change the secret key to a much stronger one. A 16 character random secret with digits, upper case and lower case characters is recommended.

# 7. VPN Configuration

## 7.1. Cisco ASA

### 7.1.1. AnyConnect

PacketFence supports Cisco ASA VPN with AnyConnect.

You can force VPN users to authenticate first on the captive portal and based on the role of the device allow it and/or set dynamic ACL.

In this example we assume that the Cisco ASA have 2 interfaces, one Management (192.168.2.1) where the VPN is activated and another one Registration (192.168.1.6) that is facing the PacketFence server (192.168.1.5).

Before trying to configure PacketFence with the Cisco ASA first be sure that when you connect with AnyConnect and when the VPN is up that your device is able to reach Internet.

```
ip local pool VPN_POOL 192.168.255.10-192.168.255.254 mask 255.255.255.0
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0
  nameif MANAGEMENT
  security-level 0
  ip address 192.168.2.1 255.255.255.0
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/1
  nameif Registration
  security-level 0
  ip address 192.168.1.5 255.255.0.0
!
same-security-traffic permit inter-interface
same-security-traffic permit intra-interface
!
object network NETWORK_OBJ_192.168.255.0_24
  subnet 192.168.255.0 255.255.255.0
access-list redirect extended deny udp any any eq domain
access-list redirect extended deny ip any host 192.168.1.5
access-list redirect extended deny icmp any any
access-list redirect extended permit tcp any any eq www
access-list redirect extended permit tcp any any eq https
!
route MANAGEMENT 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 192.168.2.254 1
!
aaa-server PacketFence protocol radius
```

```

authorize-only
interim-accounting-update periodic 1
merge-dacl before-avpair
dynamic-authorization
aaa-server PacketFence (Registration) host 192.168.1.5
  timeout 5
  key useStrongerSecret
  authentication-port 1812
  accounting-port 1813
!
http server enable
http 192.168.0.0 255.255.0.0 MANAGEMENT
!
webvpn
  enable MANAGEMENT
  anyconnect image disk0:/anyconnect-win-4.0.00051-k9.pkg 8
  anyconnect image disk0:/anyconnect-linux-64-4.0.00051-k9.pkg 9
  anyconnect image disk0:/anyconnect-macosx-i386-4.0.00051-k9.pkg 10
  anyconnect profiles VPN_client_profile disk0:/VPN_client_profile.xml
  anyconnect enable
  tunnel-group-list enable
  cache
  disable
  error-recovery disable
  group-policy GroupPolicy_VPN internal
  group-policy GroupPolicy_VPN attributes
  dns-server value 1.1.1.1
  vpn-tunnel-protocol ikev2 ssl-client
  split-tunnel-policy tunnelall
  split-tunnel-network-list none
  default-domain value acme.com
webvpn
  anyconnect profiles value VPN_client_profile type user
tunnel-group VPN type remote-access
tunnel-group VPN general-attributes
  address-pool (MANAGEMENT) VPN_POOL
  address-pool VPN_POOL
  authentication-server-group PacketFence
  accounting-server-group PacketFence
  default-group-policy GroupPolicy_VPN
tunnel-group VPN webvpn-attributes
  group-alias VPN enable

```

## 7.2. OpenVPN

PacketFence support OpenVPN with PAP authentication.

## 7.2.1. OpenVPN server configuration

In this section we will cover the OpenVPN installation on a Debian 11 machine and how to configure it.

```
apt install libcrypt20-dev openvpn easy-rsa
```

```
mkdir -p /etc/openvpn/server/certs
cd /etc/openvpn/server/certs
openssl genrsa -out ca.key 2048
openssl req -new -x509 -days 3650 -key ca.key -out ca.crt
openssl genrsa -out vpn.key 2048
openssl req -new -key vpn.key -out vpn.csr
openssl x509 -req -in vpn.csr -out vpn.crt -CA ca.crt -CAkey ca.key
-CAcreateserial -days 365
openssl dhparam -out dh2048.pem 2048
```

Edit the server.conf file and paste this following content:

```
vim /etc/openvpn/server.conf
```

```
port 443
proto tcp4
dev tun
server 10.11.0.0 255.255.255.0
ca /etc/openvpn/server/certs/ca.crt
cert /etc/openvpn/server/certs/vpn.crt
key /etc/openvpn/server/certs/vpn.key
dh /etc/openvpn/server/certs/dh2048.pem
plugin /etc/openvpn/radiusplugin.so /etc/openvpn/radiusplugin.cnf
persist-key
persist-tun
keepalive 10 60
reneg-sec 0
comp-lzo
tun-mtu 1468
tun-mtu-extra 32
mssfix 1400
push "persist-key"
push "persist-tun"
push "redirect-gateway def1"
push "dhcp-option DNS 8.8.8.8"
push "dhcp-option DNS 8.8.4.4"
status /etc/openvpn/443.log
```

```
verb 3
verify-client-cert none
```

Next you need to compile the radius extension for openvpn:

```
wget https://github.com/ValdikSS/openvpn-
radiusplugin/archive/refs/heads/master.zip
unzip master.zip
cd openvpn-radiusplugin-master
```

Then apply this patch:

```
diff -ruN openvpn-radiusplugin-master.orig/Config.cpp openvpn-radiusplugin-
master/Config.cpp
--- openvpn-radiusplugin-master.orig/Config.cpp 2015-12-23 08:07:19.000000000
-0500
+++ openvpn-radiusplugin-master/Config.cpp      2021-11-09 11:17:21.759139003
-0500
@@ -240,6 +240,14 @@
                                     this-
>clientcertnotrequired=true;
                                     }
                                     }
+                                     if (param == "verify-client-cert")
+                                     {
+                                     this->deletechars(&line);
+                                     if (line == "verify-client-
certoptional" || line == "verify-client-certnone")
+                                     {
+                                     this-
>clientcertnotrequired=true;
                                     }
+                                     }
+                                     if (param == "username-as-common-
name")
+                                     {
+                                     this->deletechars(&line);
```

Compile the plugin:

```
make
cp radiusplugin.so /etc/openvpn/
```

Then edit the radiusplugin.cnf file:

```
vim /etc/openvpn/radiusplugin.cnf
```

```
NAS-Identifier=OpenVpn
Service-Type=5
Framed-Protocol=1
NAS-Port-Type=5
NAS-IP-Address=192.168.0.6
OpenVPNConfig=/etc/openvpn/server.conf
overwriteccfiles=true
useauthcontrolfile=true
useclientconnectdeferfile=true
nonfatalaccounting=false
defacctinteriminterval=0
```

```
server
{
    acctport=1813
    authport=1815
    name=192.168.0.5
    retry=1
    wait=30
    sharedsecret=secret
}
```

## 7.2.2. PacketFence configuration

On the PacketFence side the only thing you need to do is to create a new switch as type OpenVPN with the ip address 192.168.0.6 and with the shared secret 'secret'. And enable "CLI Access Enabled" in the switch too to enable the radius-cli to start.



# 8. Firewall Configuration

## 8.1. Palo Alto firewall

### 8.1.1. Palo Alto (PAN-OS) web admin access

You can manage administrator access (through web admin) to Palo Alto firewalls using RADIUS.

#### Palo Alto

You can follow [Palo Alto official documentation](#) with following adjustments to integrate with PacketFence:

- Administrator Use only: **enabled**
- Authentication Protocol: **PAP**
- Retrieve user group from RADIUS: **disabled**. You need to specify **all** in the Allow List of the authentication profile.

At some point, you will need to configure two admin role profiles (which are preconfigured in PacketFence):

- **read\_only\_role**: you need to adjust permissions to provide read only access to firewall configuration
- **read\_write\_role**: you need to adjust permissions to provide read-write access to firewall configuration

#### PacketFence

You need to declare your Palo Alto firewall as a switch with:

- Management IP address of firewall as **Identifier**
- Palo Alto PAN-OS (template based) as **Type**
- CLI/VPN Access enabled: **Yes**

#### Troubleshooting

On Palo Alto, you can see how RADIUS replies are handled using *Monitor* → *Logs* → *System*

## 9. Additional Information

For more information, please consult the mailing archives or post your questions to it. For details, see:

- [packetfence-announce@lists.sourceforge.net](mailto:packetfence-announce@lists.sourceforge.net): Public announcements (new releases, security warnings etc.) regarding PacketFence
- [packetfence-devel@lists.sourceforge.net](mailto:packetfence-devel@lists.sourceforge.net): Discussion of PacketFence development
- [packetfence-users@lists.sourceforge.net](mailto:packetfence-users@lists.sourceforge.net): User and usage discussions

# 10. Commercial Support and Contact Information

For any questions or comments, do not hesitate to contact us by writing an email to: [support@inverse.ca](mailto:support@inverse.ca).

Inverse (<https://inverse.ca>) offers professional services around PacketFence to help organizations deploy the solution, customize, migrate versions or from another system, performance tuning or aligning with best practices.

Hourly rates or support packages are offered to best suit your needs.

Please visit <https://inverse.ca/> for details.

# 11. GNU Free Documentation License

Please refer to <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/fdl-1.2.txt> for the full license.